

# Recurrence Relations

**Aritra Hazra**

Department of Computer Science and Engineering,  
Indian Institute of Technology Kharagpur,  
Paschim Medinipur, West Bengal, India - 721302.

Email: [aritrah@cse.iitkgp.ac.in](mailto:aritrah@cse.iitkgp.ac.in)

Autumn 2020

# Introduction

Recurrence Relations are **Mathematical Equations**: A recurrence relation is an equation which is defined in terms of itself.

# Introduction

**Recurrence Relations are Mathematical Equations:** A recurrence relation is an equation which is defined in terms of itself.

**Natural Computable Functions as Recurrences:** Many natural functions are expressed using recurrence relations.

- (*linear*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + 1, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n$
- (*polynomial*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + n, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = \frac{1}{2}(n^2 + n)$
- (*exponential*)  $f(n) = 2 \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = 2^n$
- (*factorial*)  $f(n) = n \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n!$

# Introduction

**Recurrence Relations are Mathematical Equations:** A recurrence relation is an equation which is defined in terms of itself.

**Natural Computable Functions as Recurrences:** Many natural functions are expressed using recurrence relations.

- (*linear*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + 1, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n$
- (*polynomial*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + n, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = \frac{1}{2}(n^2 + n)$
- (*exponential*)  $f(n) = 2 \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = 2^n$
- (*factorial*)  $f(n) = n \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n!$

**Recurrence is Mathematical Induction:**

*Recurrence:*  $T(n) = 2T(n-1) + 1$  with base condition,  $T(0) = 0$ .

*Base-condition check:*  $T(0) = 2^0 - 1$

*Induction Hypothesis:*  $T(n-1) = 2^{n-1} - 1$

*Proof:*  $T(n) = 2T(n-1) + 1 = 2(2^{n-1} - 1) + 1 = 2^n - 1$

# Introduction

**Recurrence Relations are Mathematical Equations:** A recurrence relation is an equation which is defined in terms of itself.

**Natural Computable Functions as Recurrences:** Many natural functions are expressed using recurrence relations.

- (*linear*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + 1, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n$
- (*polynomial*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + n, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = \frac{1}{2}(n^2 + n)$
- (*exponential*)  $f(n) = 2 \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = 2^n$
- (*factorial*)  $f(n) = n \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n!$

**Recurrence is Mathematical Induction:**

*Recurrence:*  $T(n) = 2T(n-1) + 1$  with base condition,  $T(0) = 0$ .

*Base-condition check:*  $T(0) = 2^0 - 1$

*Induction Hypothesis:*  $T(n-1) = 2^{n-1} - 1$

*Proof:*  $T(n) = 2T(n-1) + 1 = 2(2^{n-1} - 1) + 1 = 2^n - 1$

**Types of Recurrence Relations:**

- First Order, Second Order, ..., Higher Order
- Linear vs. Non-Linear
- Homogeneous vs. Non-Homogeneous
- Constant vs. Variable Coefficients

# Introduction

**Recurrence Relations are Mathematical Equations:** A recurrence relation is an equation which is defined in terms of itself.

**Natural Computable Functions as Recurrences:** Many natural functions are expressed using recurrence relations.

- (*linear*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + 1, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n$
- (*polynomial*)  $f(n) = f(n-1) + n, f(1) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = \frac{1}{2}(n^2 + n)$
- (*exponential*)  $f(n) = 2 \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = 2^n$
- (*factorial*)  $f(n) = n \cdot f(n-1), f(0) = 1 \Rightarrow f(n) = n!$

**Recurrence is Mathematical Induction:**

*Recurrence:*  $T(n) = 2T(n-1) + 1$  with base condition,  $T(0) = 0$ .

*Base-condition check:*  $T(0) = 2^0 - 1$

*Induction Hypothesis:*  $T(n-1) = 2^{n-1} - 1$

*Proof:*  $T(n) = 2T(n-1) + 1 = 2(2^{n-1} - 1) + 1 = 2^n - 1$

**Types of Recurrence Relations:**

- First Order, Second Order, ..., Higher Order
- Linear vs. Non-Linear
- Homogeneous vs. Non-Homogeneous
- Constant vs. Variable Coefficients

**Applications:** Algorithm Analysis, Counting, Problem Solving, Reasoning etc.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)



# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No line is parallel and co-linear with another.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No line is parallel and co-linear with another.
- 2 **Observation-1:**  $(n + 1)^{th}$  line, when introduced into a plane with  $n$  lines, intersects with all  $n$  line exactly once.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No line is parallel and co-linear with another.
- 2 **Observation-1:**  $(n + 1)^{th}$  line, when introduced into a plane with  $n$  lines, intersects with all  $n$  line exactly once.
- 3 **Observation-2:** When traversed from one endpoint to another of a newly introduced line, every time at crossing-point of intersection with another line, the new line has created one new region.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No line is parallel and co-linear with another.
- 2 **Observation-1:**  $(n + 1)^{th}$  line, when introduced into a plane with  $n$  lines, intersects with all  $n$  line exactly once.
- 3 **Observation-2:** When traversed from one endpoint to another of a newly introduced line, every time at crossing-point of intersection with another line, the new line has created one new region.
- 4 **Observation-3:** After last intersection, the line cuts the infinite ending region into two (that is, introducing the final new region).

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No line is parallel and co-linear with another.
- 2 **Observation-1:**  $(n + 1)^{th}$  line, when introduced into a plane with  $n$  lines, intersects with all  $n$  line exactly once.
- 3 **Observation-2:** When traversed from one endpoint to another of a newly introduced line, every time at crossing-point of intersection with another line, the new line has created one new region.
- 4 **Observation-3:** After last intersection, the line cuts the infinite ending region into two (that is, introducing the final new region).

**Recurrence Relation:**  $L_n =$  maximum number of regions created by  $n$  lines in a plane.

$$L_n = \begin{cases} L_{n-1} + n, & \text{if } n > 0 \\ 1, & \text{if } n = 0 \end{cases}$$

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Straight Lines in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  lines in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Proposed by Jacob Steiner in 1826)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No line is parallel and co-linear with another.
- 2 **Observation-1:**  $(n + 1)^{th}$  line, when introduced into a plane with  $n$  lines, intersects with all  $n$  line exactly once.
- 3 **Observation-2:** When traversed from one endpoint to another of a newly introduced line, every time at crossing-point of intersection with another line, the new line has created one new region.
- 4 **Observation-3:** After last intersection, the line cuts the infinite ending region into two (that is, introducing the final new region).

**Recurrence Relation:**  $L_n =$  maximum number of regions created by  $n$  lines in a plane.

$$L_n = \begin{cases} L_{n-1} + n, & \text{if } n > 0 \\ 1, & \text{if } n = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Number of Regions:**  $L_n = L_{n-1} + n = L_{n-2} + (n-1) + n = L_{n-3} + (n-2) + (n-1) + n$   
 $= \dots = L_0 + 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (n-2) + (n-1) + n = 1 + \sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2} + 1$

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Variant of Maximum Regions by Straight Lines Problem)



# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Variant of Maximum Regions by Straight Lines Problem)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No V-shaped bent-line tip will coincide with the tip of another bent-line.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Variant of Maximum Regions by Straight Lines Problem)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No V-shaped bent-line tip will coincide with the tip of another bent-line.
- 2 **Observation-1:** A bent-line is like two straight lines except that regions merge when the two lines do not extend past their intersection point.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Variant of Maximum Regions by Straight Lines Problem)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No V-shaped bent-line tip will coincide with the tip of another bent-line.
- 2 **Observation-1:** A bent-line is like two straight lines except that regions merge when the two lines do not extend past their intersection point.
- 3 **Observation-2:** The tip point must lie beyond the intersections with the other lines – that is all we lose; that is, we lose only two regions per line.

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Variant of Maximum Regions by Straight Lines Problem)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No V-shaped bent-line tip will coincide with the tip of another bent-line.
- 2 **Observation-1:** A bent-line is like two straight lines except that regions merge when the two lines do not extend past their intersection point.
- 3 **Observation-2:** The tip point must lie beyond the intersections with the other lines – that is all we lose; that is, we lose only two regions per line.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $V_n =$  maximum number of regions created by  $n$  bent-lines.

$$V_n = \begin{cases} L_{2n} - 2n, & \text{if } n > 0 \\ 1, & \text{if } n = 0 \end{cases}$$

# Recurrent Problems

## Regions using Bent Lines (V-shaped) in a Plane

**Recurrent Problem:** Maximum number of regions defined using  $n$  bent-lines (V-shaped) in a plane.

**Recursive Solution:** (Variant of Maximum Regions by Straight Lines Problem)

- 1 **Observation-0:** No V-shaped bent-line tip will coincide with the tip of another bent-line.
- 2 **Observation-1:** A bent-line is like two straight lines except that regions merge when the two lines do not extend past their intersection point.
- 3 **Observation-2:** The tip point must lie beyond the intersections with the other lines – that is all we lose; that is, we lose only two regions per line.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $V_n =$  maximum number of regions created by  $n$  bent-lines.

$$V_n = \begin{cases} L_{2n} - 2n, & \text{if } n > 0 \\ 1, & \text{if } n = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Number of Regions:**  $V_n = L_{2n} - 2n = \frac{2n(2n+1)}{2} + 1 - 2n = 2n^2 - n + 1$

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring all  $n$  disks (having different sizes) from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 3 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring all  $n$  disks (having different sizes) from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by François Édouard Anatole Lucas in 1883)

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 3 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring all  $n$  disks (having different sizes) from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by François Édouard Anatole Lucas in 1883)

- 1 If  $n = 1$ , Move the disk from Peg-A to Peg-B.



# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 3 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring all  $n$  disks (having different sizes) from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by François Édouard Anatole Lucas in 1883)

- 1 If  $n = 1$ , Move the disk from Peg-A to Peg-B.
- 2 If  $n > 1$ , Move top  $(n - 1)$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-C using Peg-B as auxiliary. Move Largest disk directly from Peg-A to Peg-B. Move  $(n - 1)$  disks from Peg-C to Peg-B using Peg-A as auxiliary.

# Recurrent Problems

## Tower of Hanoi:

## $n$ Disk Transfer with 3 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring all  $n$  disks (having different sizes) from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

## Recursive Solution:

(Proposed by François Édouard Anatole Lucas in 1883)

- 1 If  $n = 1$ , Move the disk from Peg-A to Peg-B.
- 2 If  $n > 1$ , Move top  $(n - 1)$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-C using Peg-B as auxiliary. Move Largest disk directly from Peg-A to Peg-B. Move  $(n - 1)$  disks from Peg-C to Peg-B using Peg-A as auxiliary.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n =$  number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks.

$$T_n = \begin{cases} T_{n-1} + 1 + T_{n-1}, & \text{if } n > 1 \\ 1, & \text{if } n = 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1 \quad (n > 1), T_1 = 1$$

# Recurrent Problems

## Tower of Hanoi:

## $n$ Disk Transfer with 3 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring all  $n$  disks (having different sizes) from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

## Recursive Solution:

(Proposed by François Édouard Anatole Lucas in 1883)

- 1 If  $n = 1$ , Move the disk from Peg-A to Peg-B.
- 2 If  $n > 1$ , Move top  $(n - 1)$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-C using Peg-B as auxiliary. Move Largest disk directly from Peg-A to Peg-B. Move  $(n - 1)$  disks from Peg-C to Peg-B using Peg-A as auxiliary.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n =$  number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks.

$$T_n = \begin{cases} T_{n-1} + 1 + T_{n-1}, & \text{if } n > 1 \\ 1, & \text{if } n = 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1 \quad (n > 1), T_1 = 1$$

**Number of Moves:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1 = 2^2 T_{n-2} + 2 + 1 = 2^3 T_{n-3} + 2^2 + 2 + 1 = \dots$   
 $= 2^{n-1} T_1 + 2^{n-2} + 2^{n-3} + \dots + 2^2 + 2^1 + 2^0 = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} 2^i = 2^n - 1$

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by J.S. Frame and B.M. Stewart in 1941)

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by J.S. Frame and B.M. Stewart in 1941)

- 1 If  $n \leq 3$ , Solve the problem directly using 3 pegs.

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by J.S. Frame and B.M. Stewart in 1941)

- 1 If  $n \leq 3$ , Solve the problem directly using 3 pegs.
- 2 Fix a value of  $k$  in the range  $1 \leq k \leq n$ .

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

**Recursive Solution:**

(Proposed by J.S. Frame and B.M. Stewart in 1941)

- 1 If  $n \leq 3$ , Solve the problem directly using 3 pegs.
- 2 Fix a value of  $k$  in the range  $1 \leq k \leq n$ .
- 3 Keep the  $k$  largest disks on Peg-A, and transfer the smallest  $(n - k)$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-D.



# Recurrent Problems

## Tower of Hanoi:

## $n$ Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

## Recursive Solution:

(Proposed by J.S. Frame and B.M. Stewart in 1941)

- 1 If  $n \leq 3$ , Solve the problem directly using 3 pegs.
- 2 Fix a value of  $k$  in the range  $1 \leq k \leq n$ .
- 3 Keep the  $k$  largest disks on Peg-A, and transfer the smallest  $(n - k)$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-D.
- 4 Transfer the largest  $k$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-B without disturbing the smallest  $(n - k)$  disks already sitting on Peg-D.  
(Since larger disk can never be above smaller disk, Peg-D is unusable in this part, that is, we solve 3-peg Tower-of-Hanoi problem on  $k$  disks.)

# Recurrent Problems

## Tower of Hanoi:

## $n$ Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs

**Recurrent Problem:** Number of steps required in transferring  $n$  different-sized disks from Peg-A to Peg-B using auxiliary Peg-C and Peg-D, such that –

- Always smaller sized disk is placed above larger sized disk.
- At start, all  $n$  disks are stacked together in Peg-A in their descending order of size (bottom-up).

## Recursive Solution:

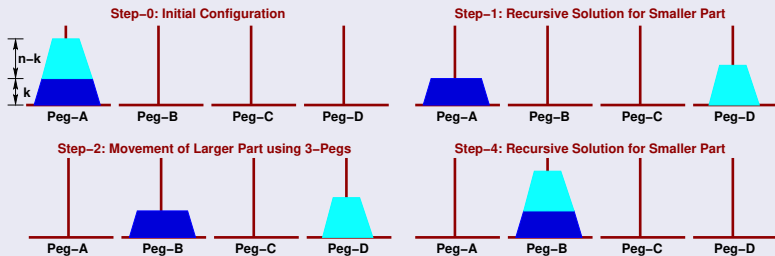
(Proposed by J.S. Frame and B.M. Stewart in 1941)

- 1 If  $n \leq 3$ , Solve the problem directly using 3 pegs.
- 2 Fix a value of  $k$  in the range  $1 \leq k \leq n$ .
- 3 Keep the  $k$  largest disks on Peg-A, and transfer the smallest  $(n - k)$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-D.
- 4 Transfer the largest  $k$  disks from Peg-A to Peg-B without disturbing the smallest  $(n - k)$  disks already sitting on Peg-D.  
(Since larger disk can never be above smaller disk, Peg-D is unusable in this part, that is, we solve 3-peg Tower-of-Hanoi problem on  $k$  disks.)
- 5 Transfer the smallest  $(n - k)$  disks from Peg-D to Peg-B without disturbing the largest  $k$  disks on Peg-B.  
(In this step, all the four pegs can be used.)

# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

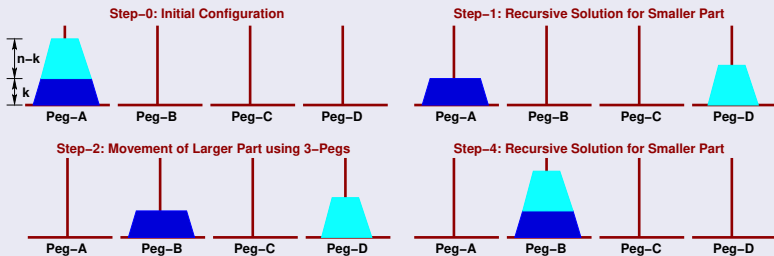
$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs



# Recurrent Problems

Tower of Hanoi:

$n$  Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs



Recurrence Relation:  $H_n$  = number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks with 4-pegs.

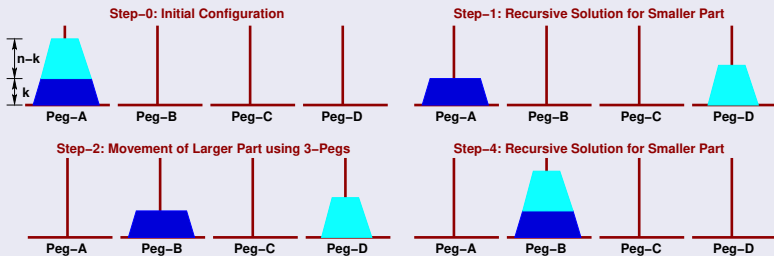
$T_n$  = number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks with 3-pegs.

$$\therefore H_n = \begin{cases} H_{n-k} + T_k + H_{n-k} & = 2H_{n-k} + 2^k - 1, & \text{if } n > 3 \\ T_n & = 2^n - 1, & \text{if } 0 \leq n \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

# Recurrent Problems

## Tower of Hanoi:

## $n$ Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs



**Recurrence Relation:**  $H_n$  = number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks with 4-pegs.

$T_n$  = number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks with 3-pegs.

$$\therefore H_n = \begin{cases} H_{n-k} + T_k + H_{n-k} & = 2H_{n-k} + 2^k - 1, & \text{if } n > 3 \\ T_n & = 2^n - 1, & \text{if } 0 \leq n \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

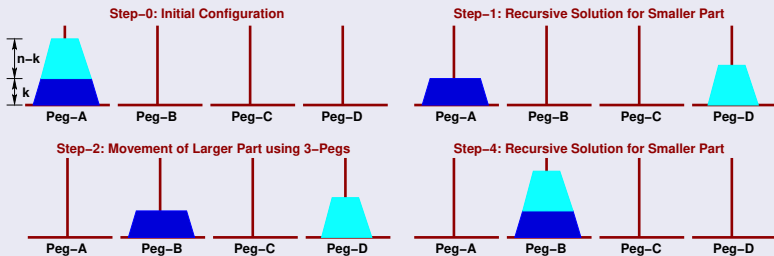
**Number of Moves:** Depends on best choice of  $k$ . For simplicity, let us assume  $n = uk$ .

$$\begin{aligned} U_n &\approx 2U_{n-k} + 2^k \approx 2^2 U_{n-2k} + (2+1) \cdot 2^k \approx 2^3 U_{n-3k} + (2^2 + 2 + 1) \cdot 2^k \\ &\approx \dots \approx 2^{u-1} U_k + (2^{u-2} + 2^{u-3} + \dots + 2^2 + 2^1 + 2^0) \cdot 2^k \\ &\approx \left( \sum_{i=0}^{u-1} 2^i \right) \cdot 2^k = 2^{u+k} = 2^{\frac{n}{k}+k} \quad (\text{by Paul Stockmeyer in 1994}) \end{aligned}$$

# Recurrent Problems

## Tower of Hanoi:

## $n$ Disk Transfer with 4 Pegs



**Recurrence Relation:**  $H_n$  = number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks with 4-pegs.

$T_n$  = number of movements for transferring  $n$  disks with 3-pegs.

$$\therefore H_n = \begin{cases} H_{n-k} + T_k + H_{n-k} & = 2H_{n-k} + 2^k - 1, & \text{if } n > 3 \\ T_n & = 2^n - 1, & \text{if } 0 \leq n \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

**Number of Moves:** Depends on best choice of  $k$ . For simplicity, let us assume  $n = uk$ .

$$\begin{aligned} U_n &\approx 2U_{n-k} + 2^k \approx 2^2 U_{n-2k} + (2+1) \cdot 2^k \approx 2^3 U_{n-3k} + (2^2 + 2 + 1) \cdot 2^k \\ &\approx \dots \approx 2^{u-1} U_k + (2^{u-2} + 2^{u-3} + \dots + 2^2 + 2^1 + 2^0) \cdot 2^k \\ &\approx \left( \sum_{i=0}^{u-1} 2^i \right) \cdot 2^k = 2^{u+k} = 2^{\frac{n}{k} + k} \quad (\text{by Paul Stockmeyer in 1994}) \end{aligned}$$

Since,  $\left(\frac{n}{k} + k\right)$  can be minimized for  $k = \sqrt{n}$ , therefore  $U_n \approx 2^{2\sqrt{n}}$ .

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $c$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $c$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = c.t_{n-1} = c^2.t_{n-2} = \dots = c^i.t_{n-i} = \dots = c^n.t_0 = B.c^n$ , for  $n \geq 0$



# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $c$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = c.t_{n-1} = c^2.t_{n-2} = \dots = c^i.t_{n-i} = \dots = c^n.t_0 = B.c^n$ , for  $n \geq 0$

## Example

- $a_n = 3.a_{n-1}$  where  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_2 = 18$ . Clearly,  $a_2 = 3^2.a_0 = 18 \Rightarrow a_0 = 2$ . So,  $a_n = 2.3^n$  for  $n \geq 0$  is the unique solution.

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $c$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = c.t_{n-1} = c^2.t_{n-2} = \dots = c^i.t_{n-i} = \dots = c^n.t_0 = B.c^n$ , for  $n \geq 0$

## Example

- 1  $a_n = 3.a_{n-1}$  where  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_2 = 18$ . Clearly,  $a_2 = 3^2.a_0 = 18 \Rightarrow a_0 = 2$ . So,  $a_n = 2.3^n$  for  $n \geq 0$  is the unique solution.
- 2 *Number of Different Summands of  $n$ :  $s_{n+1} = 2.s_n$  where  $n \geq 1$  with boundary condition  $s_1 = 1$ .*

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $c$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = c.t_{n-1} = c^2.t_{n-2} = \dots = c^i.t_{n-i} = \dots = c^n.t_0 = B.c^n$ , for  $n \geq 0$

## Example

- $a_n = 3.a_{n-1}$  where  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_2 = 18$ . Clearly,  $a_2 = 3^2.a_0 = 18 \Rightarrow a_0 = 2$ . So,  $a_n = 2.3^n$  for  $n \geq 0$  is the unique solution.
- Number of Different Summands of  $n$ :  $s_{n+1} = 2.s_n$  where  $n \geq 1$  with boundary condition  $s_1 = 1$ .* To directly apply the formula proposed, let  $t_n = s_{n+1}$ , which formulates the recurrence as,  $t_n = 2.t_{n-1}$  where  $n \geq 0$  with  $t_0 = 1$ . So,  $t_n = 1.2^n$ . Now,  $s_n = t_{n-1} = 2^{n-1}$  for  $n \geq 1$ .

Different Summands of 3		Different Summands of 4			
(1) 3	(2) 1+2	(1') 4	(2') 1+3	(3') 2+2	(4') 1+1+2
(3) 2+1	(4) 1+1+1	(1'') 3+1	(2'') 1+2+1	(3'') 2+1+1	(4'') 1+1+1+1

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with **Variable Coefficients**

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with **Variable Coefficients**

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

$$\text{Solution: } t_n = f(n-1).t_{n-1} = f(n-2).f(n-1).t_{n-2} = \cdots = B. \left[ \prod_{k=1}^n f(n-k) \right]$$

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with **Variable Coefficients**

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = f(n-1).t_{n-1} = f(n-2).f(n-1).t_{n-2} = \dots = B. \left[ \prod_{k=1}^n f(n-k) \right]$

Example: (Factorials)  $f_n = n.f_{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$  and  $f_0 = 1$ . Solution:  $f_n = n!$  ( $n \geq 0$ ).

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with **Variable Coefficients**

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = f(n-1).t_{n-1} = f(n-2).f(n-1).t_{n-2} = \dots = B. \left[ \prod_{k=1}^n f(n-k) \right]$

Example: (Factorials)  $f_n = n.f_{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$  and  $f_0 = 1$ . Solution:  $f_n = n!$  ( $n \geq 0$ ).

## First-Order **Non-Linear** Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1}^k = c.t_n^k$ , where  $t_n > 0$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c, k$  are constants

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with **Variable Coefficients**

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = f(n-1).t_{n-1} = f(n-2).f(n-1).t_{n-2} = \dots = B. \left[ \prod_{k=1}^n f(n-k) \right]$

Example: (Factorials)  $f_n = n.f_{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$  and  $f_0 = 1$ . Solution:  $f_n = n!$  ( $n \geq 0$ ).

## First-Order **Non-Linear** Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1}^k = c.t_n^k$ , where  $t_n > 0$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c, k$  are constants

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution: Let  $r_n = t_n^k$ . So, the recurrence becomes,  $r_{n+1} = c.r_n$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $r_0 = B^k$ . Hence,  $t_n^k = r_n = B^k.c^n$  implying  $t_n = B.(\sqrt[k]{c})^n$  for  $n \geq 0$ .



# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with **Variable Coefficients**

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution:  $t_n = f(n-1).t_{n-1} = f(n-2).f(n-1).t_{n-2} = \dots = B. \left[ \prod_{k=1}^n f(n-k) \right]$

Example: (Factorials)  $f_n = n.f_{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$  and  $f_0 = 1$ . Solution:  $f_n = n!$  ( $n \geq 0$ ).

## First-Order **Non-Linear** Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1}^k = c.t_n^k$ , where  $t_n > 0$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c, k$  are constants

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

Solution: Let  $r_n = t_n^k$ . So, the recurrence becomes,  $r_{n+1} = c.r_n$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $r_0 = B^k$ . Hence,  $t_n^k = r_n = B^k.c^n$  implying  $t_n = B.(\sqrt[k]{c})^n$  for  $n \geq 0$ .

Example (a small **Variation**):  $\log_2 a_{n+1} = 2. \log_2 a_n$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $a_0 = 2$ .

Putting  $b_n = \log_2 a_n$  gives  $b_{n+1} = 2.b_n$  and  $b_0 = 1$ .

So,  $b_n = 2^n$  and hence  $a_n = 2^{2^n}$  for  $n \geq 0$ .

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} + d.t_n = f(n)$  or alternatively,  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n + f(n)$ , where  $f(n) \neq 0$  (which means non-homogeneous) for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c = -d$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} + d.t_n = f(n)$  or alternatively,  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n + f(n)$ , where  $f(n) \neq 0$  (which means non-homogeneous) for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c = -d$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } t_n &= c.t_{n-1} + f(n-1) = c^2.t_{n-2} + c^1.f(n-2) + f(n-1) = \dots \\ &= c^i.t_{n-i} + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} c^k.f(n-i+k) = \dots = B.c^n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} c^k.f(k), \text{ for } n \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} + d.t_n = f(n)$  or alternatively,  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n + f(n)$ , where  $f(n) \neq 0$  (which means non-homogeneous) for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c = -d$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } t_n &= c.t_{n-1} + f(n-1) = c^2.t_{n-2} + c^1.f(n-2) + f(n-1) = \dots \\ &= c^i.t_{n-i} + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} c^k.f(n-i+k) = \dots = B.c^n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} c^k.f(k), \text{ for } n \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Example: ● (Comparisons in Sorting) – Bubble, Selection and Insertion  
 $a_n = a_{n-1} + (n-1)$  where  $n \geq 2$  and  $a_1 = 0$ .

Hence, the solution,  $a_n = 0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} k = \frac{n^2-n}{2}$ .  $\Rightarrow O(n^2)$

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} + d.t_n = f(n)$  or alternatively,  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n + f(n)$ , where  $f(n) \neq 0$  (which means non-homogeneous) for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c = -d$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } t_n &= c.t_{n-1} + f(n-1) = c^2.t_{n-2} + c^1.f(n-2) + f(n-1) = \dots \\ &= c^i.t_{n-i} + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} c^k.f(n-i+k) = \dots = B.c^n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} c^k.f(k), \text{ for } n \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Example: ● (Comparisons in Sorting) – Bubble, Selection and Insertion

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + (n-1) \text{ where } n \geq 2 \text{ and } a_1 = 0.$$

$$\text{Hence, the solution, } a_n = 0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} k = \frac{n^2-n}{2}. \quad \Rightarrow O(n^2)$$

● ( $n^{\text{th}}$  term in Sequence) 0, 2, 6, 12, 20, 30, 42, ...

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + 2n \text{ where } n \geq 1 \text{ and } a_0 = 0. \text{ (How?)}$$

Since  $a_1 - a_0 = 2$ ,  $a_2 - a_1 = 4$ ,  $a_3 - a_2 = 6$ ,  $a_4 - a_3 = 8$ ,  $a_5 - a_4 = 10$ ,  $a_6 - a_5 = 12$ , therefore  $a_n - a_0 = 2 + 4 + \dots + 2n = n^2 + n$ , implies  $a_n = n^2 + n$ .

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} + d.t_n = f(n)$  or alternatively,  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n + f(n)$ , where  $f(n) \neq 0$  (which means non-homogeneous) for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c = -d$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } t_n &= c.t_{n-1} + f(n-1) = c^2.t_{n-2} + c^1.f(n-2) + f(n-1) = \dots \\ &= c^i.t_{n-i} + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} c^k.f(n-i+k) = \dots = B.c^n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} c^k.f(k), \text{ for } n \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Example: ● (Comparisons in Sorting) – Bubble, Selection and Insertion

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + (n-1) \text{ where } n \geq 2 \text{ and } a_1 = 0.$$

$$\text{Hence, the solution, } a_n = 0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} k = \frac{n^2-n}{2}. \quad \Rightarrow O(n^2)$$

● ( $n^{\text{th}}$  term in Sequence) 0, 2, 6, 12, 20, 30, 42, ...

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + 2n \text{ where } n \geq 1 \text{ and } a_0 = 0. \text{ (How?)}$$

Since  $a_1 - a_0 = 2$ ,  $a_2 - a_1 = 4$ ,  $a_3 - a_2 = 6$ ,  $a_4 - a_3 = 8$ ,  $a_5 - a_4 = 10$ ,  $a_6 - a_5 = 12$ , therefore  $a_n - a_0 = 2 + 4 + \dots + 2n = n^2 + n$ , implies  $a_n = n^2 + n$ .

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Variable Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n + g(n)$ , where  $g(n) \neq 0$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $t_0 = B$  (constant)

# Solving First-Order Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} + d.t_n = f(n)$  or alternatively,  $t_{n+1} = c.t_n + f(n)$ , where  $f(n) \neq 0$  (which means non-homogeneous) for  $n \geq 0$  and  $c = -d$  is a constant

Boundary Condition:  $t_0 = B$ , where  $B$  is a constant

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } t_n &= c.t_{n-1} + f(n-1) = c^2.t_{n-2} + c^1.f(n-2) + f(n-1) = \dots \\ &= c^i.t_{n-i} + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} c^k.f(n-i+k) = \dots = B.c^n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} c^k.f(k), \text{ for } n \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Example: ● (Comparisons in Sorting) – Bubble, Selection and Insertion

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + (n-1) \text{ where } n \geq 2 \text{ and } a_1 = 0.$$

$$\text{Hence, the solution, } a_n = 0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} k = \frac{n^2-n}{2}. \quad \Rightarrow O(n^2)$$

● ( $n^{\text{th}}$  term in Sequence) 0, 2, 6, 12, 20, 30, 42, ...

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + 2n \text{ where } n \geq 1 \text{ and } a_0 = 0. \text{ (How?)}$$

Since  $a_1 - a_0 = 2$ ,  $a_2 - a_1 = 4$ ,  $a_3 - a_2 = 6$ ,  $a_4 - a_3 = 8$ ,  $a_5 - a_4 = 10$ ,  $a_6 - a_5 = 12$ , therefore  $a_n - a_0 = 2 + 4 + \dots + 2n = n^2 + n$ , implies  $a_n = n^2 + n$ .

## First-Order Linear **Non-Homogeneous** Recurrence with Variable Coefficients

General Form:  $t_{n+1} = f(n).t_n + g(n)$ , where  $g(n) \neq 0$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $t_0 = B$  (constant)

$$\text{Generic Solution: } t_n = B \cdot \left[ \prod_{k=0}^{n-1} f(k) \right] + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \left[ \prod_{j=1}^{k-1} f(n-j) \right] \cdot g(n-k), \text{ for } n \geq 0$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0 \cdot t_n + C_1 \cdot t_{n-1} + C_2 \cdot t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Distinct Real Roots as,  $R_1 = \frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}, R_2 = \frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Distinct Real Roots as,  $R_1 = \frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}, R_2 = \frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}$

Exact Solution: As  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n$  and  $t_n = A_2.R_2^n$  are linearly independent solutions, so  
 $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.\left(\frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n + A_2.\left(\frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n$   
(Here,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are arbitrary constants)

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Distinct Real Roots as,  $R_1 = \frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}, R_2 = \frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}$

Exact Solution: As  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n$  and  $t_n = A_2.R_2^n$  are linearly independent solutions, so  
 $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.\left(\frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n + A_2.\left(\frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n$   
(Here,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are arbitrary constants)

Constant Determination:  $A_1 + A_2 = t_0 = D_0$  and  $A_1 - A_2 = \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}$

because,  $D_1 = t_1 = (A_1 + A_2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) + (A_1 - A_2).\left(\frac{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)$

$$\therefore A_1 = \frac{1}{2}\left(D_0 + \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right) \text{ and } A_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(D_0 - \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right).$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Distinct Real Roots as,  $R_1 = \frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}, R_2 = \frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}$

Exact Solution: As  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n$  and  $t_n = A_2.R_2^n$  are linearly independent solutions, so  
 $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.\left(\frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n + A_2.\left(\frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n$   
(Here,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are arbitrary constants)

Constant Determination:  $A_1 + A_2 = t_0 = D_0$  and  $A_1 - A_2 = \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}$

because,  $D_1 = t_1 = (A_1 + A_2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) + (A_1 - A_2).\left(\frac{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)$

$$\therefore A_1 = \frac{1}{2}\left(D_0 + \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right) \text{ and } A_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(D_0 - \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right).$$

Unique Solution:

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Distinct Real Roots as,  $R_1 = \frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}, R_2 = \frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}$

Exact Solution: As  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n$  and  $t_n = A_2.R_2^n$  are linearly independent solutions, so  
 $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.\left(\frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n + A_2.\left(\frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n$   
(Here,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are arbitrary constants)

Constant Determination:  $A_1 + A_2 = t_0 = D_0$  and  $A_1 - A_2 = \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}$

because,  $D_1 = t_1 = (A_1 + A_2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) + (A_1 - A_2).\left(\frac{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)$

$$\therefore A_1 = \frac{1}{2}\left(D_0 + \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right) \text{ and } A_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(D_0 - \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right).$$

Unique Solution:

$$\therefore t_n = \frac{1}{2}\left[\left(D_0 + \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right).\left(\frac{-C_1 + \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n + \left(D_0 - \frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{\sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}\right).\left(\frac{-C_1 - \sqrt{C_1^2 - 4C_0C_2}}{2C_0}\right)^n\right]$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

Recurrence Relation:  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

**Recurrence Relation:**  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

Substituting with  $F_n = c \cdot x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), we get  $cx^{n+2} = cx^{n+1} + cx^n$ .

Characteristic Equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  has two distinct roots,  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

**Recurrence Relation:**  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

Substituting with  $F_n = c \cdot x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), we get  $cx^{n+2} = cx^{n+1} + cx^n$ .

Characteristic Equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  has two distinct roots,  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

Hence,  $F_n = c_1 \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + c_2 \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$ , with the constants derived as,  $c_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $c_2 = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ .

**Solution:** (Binet Form)  $F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} [\alpha^n - \beta^n]$  ( $\alpha = 1 - \beta$  is called the *Golden Ratio*)

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

**Recurrence Relation:**  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

Substituting with  $F_n = c \cdot x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), we get  $cx^{n+2} = cx^{n+1} + cx^n$ .

Characteristic Equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  has two distinct roots,  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

Hence,  $F_n = c_1 \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + c_2 \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$ , with the constants derived as,  $c_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $c_2 = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ .

**Solution:** (Binet Form)  $F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} [\alpha^n - \beta^n]$  ( $\alpha = 1 - \beta$  is called the *Golden Ratio*)

## Example (Count of Subsets with NO Consecutive Elements Chosen)

Let, the number of such subsets of  $\mathcal{S} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is  $= a_n$

If  $n = 0 \Rightarrow \mathcal{S} = \phi$ ,  $a_0 = 1$ .      If  $n = 1 \Rightarrow \mathcal{S} = \{x_1\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

**Recurrence Relation:**  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

Substituting with  $F_n = c \cdot x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), we get  $cx^{n+2} = cx^{n+1} + cx^n$ .

Characteristic Equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  has two distinct roots,  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

Hence,  $F_n = c_1 \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + c_2 \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$ , with the constants derived as,  $c_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $c_2 = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ .

**Solution:** (Binet Form)  $F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} [\alpha^n - \beta^n]$  ( $\alpha = 1 - \beta$  is called the *Golden Ratio*)

## Example (Count of Subsets with NO Consecutive Elements Chosen)

Let, the number of such subsets of  $\mathcal{S} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is  $= a_n$

If  $n = 0 \Rightarrow \mathcal{S} = \phi$ ,  $a_0 = 1$ . If  $n = 1 \Rightarrow \mathcal{S} = \{x_1\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ .

Let  $n \geq 2$  and  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{S} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ ,  $a_n$  can be contributed from:

- When  $x_n \in \mathcal{A} \Rightarrow x_{n-1} \notin \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\therefore \mathcal{A}$  may be counted in  $a_{n-2}$  ways.
- When  $x_n \notin \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\therefore \mathcal{A}$  may be counted in  $a_{n-1}$  ways.

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

**Recurrence Relation:**  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

Substituting with  $F_n = c \cdot x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), we get  $cx^{n+2} = cx^{n+1} + cx^n$ .

Characteristic Equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  has two distinct roots,  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

Hence,  $F_n = c_1 \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + c_2 \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$ , with the constants derived as,  $c_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $c_2 = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ .

**Solution:** (Binet Form)  $F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} [\alpha^n - \beta^n]$  ( $\alpha = 1 - \beta$  is called the Golden Ratio)

## Example (Count of Subsets with NO Consecutive Elements Chosen)

Let, the number of such subsets of  $S = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is  $= a_n$

If  $n = 0 \Rightarrow S = \phi$ ,  $a_0 = 1$ . If  $n = 1 \Rightarrow S = \{x_1\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ .

Let  $n \geq 2$  and  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq S = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ ,  $a_n$  can be contributed from:

- When  $x_n \in \mathcal{A} \Rightarrow x_{n-1} \notin \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\therefore \mathcal{A}$  may be counted in  $a_{n-2}$  ways.
- When  $x_n \notin \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\therefore \mathcal{A}$  may be counted in  $a_{n-1}$  ways.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 2$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Fibonacci Number)

**Recurrence Relation:**  $F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n$ , where  $n \geq 0$  and  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$

Substituting with  $F_n = c \cdot x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), we get  $cx^{n+2} = cx^{n+1} + cx^n$ .

Characteristic Equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$  has two distinct roots,  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ .

Hence,  $F_n = c_1 \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + c_2 \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$ , with the constants derived as,  $c_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $c_2 = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ .

**Solution:** (Binet Form)  $F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \alpha^n - \beta^n \right]$  ( $\alpha = 1 - \beta$  is called the Golden Ratio)

## Example (Count of Subsets with NO Consecutive Elements Chosen)

Let, the number of such subsets of  $\mathcal{S} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is  $= a_n$

If  $n = 0 \Rightarrow \mathcal{S} = \phi$ ,  $a_0 = 1$ . If  $n = 1 \Rightarrow \mathcal{S} = \{x_1\}$ ,  $a_1 = 2$ .

Let  $n \geq 2$  and  $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{S} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ ,  $a_n$  can be contributed from:

- When  $x_n \in \mathcal{A} \Rightarrow x_{n-1} \notin \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\therefore \mathcal{A}$  may be counted in  $a_{n-2}$  ways.
- When  $x_n \notin \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\therefore \mathcal{A}$  may be counted in  $a_{n-1}$  ways.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 2$ .

**Solution:**  $a_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+2} - \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+2} \right]$ ,  $n \geq 0$  (Note that,  $a_n = F_{n+2}$ )

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Count of Binary Strings having NO consecutive 0s)

Let,  $b_n$  = number of such binary strings of length  $n$ ;

$b_n^{(0)}$  = count of such strings ending with 0 and  $b_n^{(1)}$  = count of such strings ending with 1

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Count of Binary Strings having NO consecutive 0s)

Let,  $b_n$  = number of such binary strings of length  $n$ ;

$b_n^{(0)}$  = count of such strings ending with 0 and  $b_n^{(1)}$  = count of such strings ending with 1

**Recurrence Relation:**  $b_n = 2 \cdot b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1}^{(0)} = b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1} = b_{n-2} + b_{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  
 $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 3$ , implying  $b_0 = b_2 - b_1 = 1$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Count of Binary Strings having NO consecutive 0s)

Let,  $b_n$  = number of such binary strings of length  $n$ ;

$b_n^{(0)}$  = count of such strings ending with 0 and  $b_n^{(1)}$  = count of such strings ending with 1

Recurrence Relation:  $b_n = 2 \cdot b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1}^{(0)} = b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1} = b_{n-2} + b_{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  
 $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 3$ , implying  $b_0 = b_2 - b_1 = 1$ .

Solution:  $b_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left( \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} - \left( \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} \right]$ ,  $n \geq 0$  (Note that,  $b_n = F_{n+2}$ )



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Count of Binary Strings having NO consecutive 0s)

Let,  $b_n$  = number of such binary strings of length  $n$ ;

$b_n^{(0)}$  = count of such strings ending with 0 and  $b_n^{(1)}$  = count of such strings ending with 1

Recurrence Relation:  $b_n = 2 \cdot b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1}^{(0)} = b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1} = b_{n-2} + b_{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  
 $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 3$ , implying  $b_0 = b_2 - b_1 = 1$ .

Solution:  $b_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left( \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} - \left( \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} \right]$ ,  $n \geq 0$  (Note that,  $b_n = F_{n+2}$ )

## Example ( $2 \times n$ Chessboard Tiling using Dominoes)

Let,  $t_n$  = number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard.

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Count of Binary Strings having NO consecutive 0s)

Let,  $b_n$  = number of such binary strings of length  $n$ ;

$b_n^{(0)}$  = count of such strings ending with 0 and  $b_n^{(1)}$  = count of such strings ending with 1

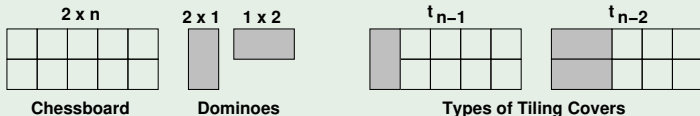
**Recurrence Relation:**  $b_n = 2 \cdot b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1}^{(0)} = b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1} = b_{n-2} + b_{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  
 $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 3$ , implying  $b_0 = b_2 - b_1 = 1$ .

**Solution:**  $b_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left( \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} - \left( \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} \right]$ ,  $n \geq 0$  (Note that,  $b_n = F_{n+2}$ )

## Example ( $2 \times n$ Chessboard Tiling using Dominoes)

Let,  $t_n$  = number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $t_n = t_{n-1} + t_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_1 = 1, t_2 = 2$



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Count of Binary Strings having NO consecutive 0s)

Let,  $b_n$  = number of such binary strings of length  $n$ ;

$b_n^{(0)}$  = count of such strings ending with 0 and  $b_n^{(1)}$  = count of such strings ending with 1

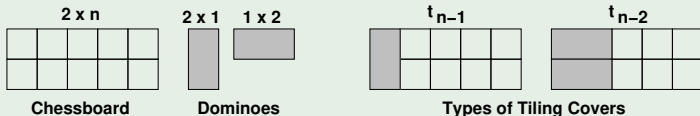
**Recurrence Relation:**  $b_n = 2 \cdot b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1}^{(0)} = b_{n-1}^{(1)} + b_{n-1} = b_{n-2} + b_{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  
 $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 3$ , implying  $b_0 = b_2 - b_1 = 1$ .

**Solution:**  $b_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left( \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} - \left( \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+2} \right]$ ,  $n \geq 0$  (Note that,  $b_n = F_{n+2}$ )

## Example ( $2 \times n$ Chessboard Tiling using Dominoes)

Let,  $t_n$  = number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $t_n = t_{n-1} + t_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_1 = 1, t_2 = 2$



**Solution:**  $t_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left( \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+1} - \left( \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^{n+1} \right]$ ,  $n \geq 0$  (Note that,  $t_n = F_{n+1}$ )

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$   
 $e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :

$10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :  
 $10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

Recurrence Relation:  $e_n = 10e_{n-1} + 39e_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $e_1 = 10, e_2 = 100 \Rightarrow e_0 = 0$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :

$10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

Recurrence Relation:  $e_n = 10e_{n-1} + 39e_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $e_1 = 10, e_2 = 100 \Rightarrow e_0 = 0$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = 5 + 3\sqrt{6}$  and  $R_2 = 5 - 3\sqrt{6}$

Solution:  $e_n = \frac{5}{3\sqrt{6}} \left[ (5 + 3\sqrt{6})^n - (5 - 3\sqrt{6})^n \right], n \geq 0$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :  
 $10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

Recurrence Relation:  $e_n = 10e_{n-1} + 39e_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $e_1 = 10, e_2 = 100 \Rightarrow e_0 = 0$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = 5 + 3\sqrt{6}$  and  $R_2 = 5 - 3\sqrt{6}$

Solution:  $e_n = \frac{5}{3\sqrt{6}} \left[ (5 + 3\sqrt{6})^n - (5 - 3\sqrt{6})^n \right], n \geq 0$

## Example (Count of Transmission Words with Constraints)

$w_n$  = number of  $n$ -length words using  $a, b, c$  (three) letters that can be transmitted where no word having two consecutive  $a$ 's



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :  
 $10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

Recurrence Relation:  $e_n = 10e_{n-1} + 39e_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $e_1 = 10, e_2 = 100 \Rightarrow e_0 = 0$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = 5 + 3\sqrt{6}$  and  $R_2 = 5 - 3\sqrt{6}$

Solution:  $e_n = \frac{5}{3\sqrt{6}} \left[ (5 + 3\sqrt{6})^n - (5 - 3\sqrt{6})^n \right], n \geq 0$

## Example (Count of Transmission Words with Constraints)

$w_n$  = number of  $n$ -length words using  $a, b, c$  (three) letters that can be transmitted where no word having two consecutive  $a$ 's

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $w_n$ :

- First letter is  $b$  or  $c$ : Number of words =  $w_{n-1}$  (each)
- First letter is  $a$ , Second letter is  $b$  or  $c$ : Number of words =  $w_{n-2}$  (each)

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :  $10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

Recurrence Relation:  $e_n = 10e_{n-1} + 39e_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $e_1 = 10, e_2 = 100 \Rightarrow e_0 = 0$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = 5 + 3\sqrt{6}$  and  $R_2 = 5 - 3\sqrt{6}$

Solution:  $e_n = \frac{5}{3\sqrt{6}} \left[ (5 + 3\sqrt{6})^n - (5 - 3\sqrt{6})^n \right], n \geq 0$

## Example (Count of Transmission Words with Constraints)

$w_n$  = number of  $n$ -length words using  $a, b, c$  (three) letters that can be transmitted where no word having two consecutive  $a$ 's

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $w_n$ :

- First letter is  $b$  or  $c$ : Number of words =  $w_{n-1}$  (each)
- First letter is  $a$ , Second letter is  $b$  or  $c$ : Number of words =  $w_{n-2}$  (each)

Recurrence Relation:  $w_n = 2w_{n-1} + 2w_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $w_0 = 1, w_1 = 3$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Counting Legal Arithmetic Expressions without Parenthesis)

10 digit symbols:  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 9$  and 4 binary operation symbols:  $+, -, *, /$

$e_n$  = number of legal arithmetic expressions with  $n$  symbols.

Note that, last symbol is always a digit. So, Two ways to construct recurrence for  $e_n$ :  
 $10e_{n-1}$  (last two symbols as digits) and  $39e_{n-2}$  (last two symbol as operator and digit)

Recurrence Relation:  $e_n = 10e_{n-1} + 39e_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $e_1 = 10, e_2 = 100 \Rightarrow e_0 = 0$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = 5 + 3\sqrt{6}$  and  $R_2 = 5 - 3\sqrt{6}$

Solution:  $e_n = \frac{5}{3\sqrt{6}} \left[ (5 + 3\sqrt{6})^n - (5 - 3\sqrt{6})^n \right], n \geq 0$

## Example (Count of Transmission Words with Constraints)

$w_n$  = number of  $n$ -length words using  $a, b, c$  (three) letters that can be transmitted where no word having two consecutive  $a$ 's

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $w_n$ :

- First letter is  $b$  or  $c$ : Number of words =  $w_{n-1}$  (each)
- First letter is  $a$ , Second letter is  $b$  or  $c$ : Number of words =  $w_{n-2}$  (each)

Recurrence Relation:  $w_n = 2w_{n-1} + w_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $w_0 = 1, w_1 = 3$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = 1 + \sqrt{3}$  and  $R_2 = 1 - \sqrt{3}$

Solution:  $w_n = \left( \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{3}} \right) (1 + \sqrt{3})^n + \left( \frac{-2+\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{3}} \right) (1 - \sqrt{3})^n, n \geq 0$

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $p_n$ :

- Appending +1 at both sides of all the  $(n - 2)^{th}$  palindromic summands.
- Incrementing both ends of all the  $(n - 2)^{th}$  palindromic summands by +1.

For 3:	For 5:	For 4:	For 6:
(1) 3	(1') 5	(1) 4	(1') 6
(2) 1 + 1 + 1	(2') 2 + 1 + 2	(2) 1 + 2 + 1	(2') 2 + 2 + 2
	(1'') 1 + 3 + 1	(3) 2 + 2	(3') 3 + 3
	(2'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4) 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4') 2 + 1 + 1 + 2
			(1'') 1 + 4 + 1
			(2'') 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 + 1
			(3'') 1 + 2 + 2 + 1
			(4'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $p_n$ :

- Appending +1 at both sides of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands.
- Incrementing both ends of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands by +1.

For 3:	For 5:	For 4:	For 6:
(1) 3	(1') 5	(1) 4	(1') 6
(2) 1 + 1 + 1	(2') 2 + 1 + 2	(2) 1 + 2 + 1	(2') 2 + 2 + 2
	(1'') 1 + 3 + 1	(3) 2 + 2	(3') 3 + 3
	(2'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4) 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4') 2 + 1 + 1 + 2
			(1'') 1 + 4 + 1
			(2'') 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 + 1
			(3'') 1 + 2 + 2 + 1
			(4'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1

Recurrence Relation:  $p_n = 2p_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  $p_1 = 1, p_2 = 2$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $p_n$ :

- Appending +1 at both sides of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands.
- Incrementing both ends of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands by +1.

For 3:	For 5:	For 4:	For 6:
(1) 3	(1') 5	(1) 4	(1') 6
(2) 1 + 1 + 1	(2') 2 + 1 + 2	(2) 1 + 2 + 1	(2') 2 + 2 + 2
	(1'') 1 + 3 + 1	(3) 2 + 2	(3') 3 + 3
	(2'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4) 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4') 2 + 1 + 1 + 2
			(1'') 1 + 4 + 1
			(2'') 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 + 1
			(3'') 1 + 2 + 2 + 1
			(4'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1

Recurrence Relation:  $p_n = 2p_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  $p_1 = 1, p_2 = 2$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = \sqrt{2}$  and  $R_2 = -\sqrt{2}$

Solution:  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^n + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^n, n \geq 1$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $p_n$ :

- Appending +1 at both sides of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands.
- Incrementing both ends of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands by +1.

For 3:	For 5:	For 4:	For 6:
(1) 3	(1') 5	(1) 4	(1') 6
(2) 1 + 1 + 1	(2') 2 + 1 + 2	(2) 1 + 2 + 1	(2') 2 + 2 + 2
	(1'') 1 + 3 + 1	(3) 2 + 2	(3') 3 + 3
	(2'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4) 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4') 2 + 1 + 1 + 2
			(1'') 1 + 4 + 1
			(2'') 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 + 1
			(3'') 1 + 2 + 2 + 1
			(4'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1

Recurrence Relation:  $p_n = 2p_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  $p_1 = 1, p_2 = 2$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = \sqrt{2}$  and  $R_2 = -\sqrt{2}$

Solution:  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^n + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^n, n \geq 1$

Observation:  $p_n = 2^{\frac{n}{2}}$  (when  $n$  is even) and  $p_n = 2^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}$  (when  $n$  is odd) (How?)



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $p_n$ :

- Appending +1 at both sides of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands.
- Incrementing both ends of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands by +1.

For 3:	For 5:	For 4:	For 6:
(1) 3	(1') 5	(1) 4	(1') 6
(2) 1 + 1 + 1	(2') 2 + 1 + 2	(2) 1 + 2 + 1	(2') 2 + 2 + 2
	(1'') 1 + 3 + 1	(3) 2 + 2	(3') 3 + 3
	(2'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4) 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4') 2 + 1 + 1 + 2
			(1'') 1 + 4 + 1
			(2'') 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 + 1
			(3'') 1 + 2 + 2 + 1
			(4'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1

Recurrence Relation:  $p_n = 2p_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  $p_1 = 1, p_2 = 2$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = \sqrt{2}$  and  $R_2 = -\sqrt{2}$

Solution:  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^n + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^n, n \geq 1$

Observation:  $p_n = 2^{\frac{n}{2}}$  (when  $n$  is even) and  $p_n = 2^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}$  (when  $n$  is odd) (How?)

Reason: For  $n = 2k$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ),  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^{2k} + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^{2k} = 2^k = 2^{\frac{n}{2}}$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Palindromic Summands)

$p_n$  = number of palindromic summands of  $n$ .

Two ways to construct recurrence for  $p_n$ :

- Appending +1 at both sides of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands.
- Incrementing both ends of all the  $(n-2)^{th}$  palindromic summands by +1.

For 3:	For 5:	For 4:	For 6:
(1) 3	(1') 5	(1) 4	(1') 6
(2) 1 + 1 + 1	(2') 2 + 1 + 2	(2) 1 + 2 + 1	(2') 2 + 2 + 2
	(1'') 1 + 3 + 1	(3) 2 + 2	(3') 3 + 3
	(2'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4) 1 + 1 + 1 + 1	(4') 2 + 1 + 1 + 2
			(1'') 1 + 4 + 1
			(2'') 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 + 1
			(3'') 1 + 2 + 2 + 1
			(4'') 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1

Recurrence Relation:  $p_n = 2p_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ ) and  $p_1 = 1, p_2 = 2$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = \sqrt{2}$  and  $R_2 = -\sqrt{2}$

Solution:  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^n + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^n, n \geq 1$

Observation:  $p_n = 2^{\frac{n}{2}}$  (when  $n$  is even) and  $p_n = 2^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}$  (when  $n$  is odd) (How?)

Reason: For  $n = 2k$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ),  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^{2k} + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^{2k} = 2^k = 2^{\frac{n}{2}}$

For  $n = 2k - 1$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ),  $p_n = \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(\sqrt{2})^{2k-1} + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)(-\sqrt{2})^{2k-1} = 2^{k-1} = 2^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor}$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

.....

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

.....

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

**Important Property of Fibonacci Numbers:**  $F_n > \alpha^{n-2}$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ), where  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

.....

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

**Important Property of Fibonacci Numbers:**  $F_n > \alpha^{n-2}$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ), where  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$

Let,  $GCD(a, b)$  uses  $n$  Divisions ( $a \geq b \geq 2$ ). So,  $b \geq F_{n+1} > \alpha^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

.....

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

**Important Property of Fibonacci Numbers:**  $F_n > \alpha^{n-2}$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ), where  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$

Let,  $GCD(a, b)$  uses  $n$  Divisions ( $a \geq b \geq 2$ ). So,  $b \geq F_{n+1} > \alpha^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}$ .

$\therefore b > \alpha^{n-1} \Rightarrow \log_{10} b > (n-1) \log_{10} \alpha > \frac{n-1}{5}$  (as  $\log_{10} \alpha = \log_{10} \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \approx 0.209 > \frac{1}{5}$ ).

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

.....

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

**Important Property of Fibonacci Numbers:**  $F_n > \alpha^{n-2}$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ), where  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$

Let,  $GCD(a, b)$  uses  $n$  Divisions ( $a \geq b \geq 2$ ). So,  $b \geq F_{n+1} > \alpha^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}$ .

$\therefore b > \alpha^{n-1} \Rightarrow \log_{10} b > (n-1) \log_{10} \alpha > \frac{n-1}{5}$  (as  $\log_{10} \alpha = \log_{10} \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \approx 0.209 > \frac{1}{5}$ ).

If  $b$  is  $k$ -digit decimal number,  $10^{k-1} \leq b < 10^k \Rightarrow k > \log_{10} b > \frac{n-1}{5} \Rightarrow n < 5k + 1$ .



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

.....

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

.....

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

**Important Property of Fibonacci Numbers:**  $F_n > \alpha^{n-2}$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ), where  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$

Let,  $GCD(a, b)$  uses  $n$  Divisions ( $a \geq b \geq 2$ ). So,  $b \geq F_{n+1} > \alpha^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}$ .

$\therefore b > \alpha^{n-1} \Rightarrow \log_{10} b > (n-1) \log_{10} \alpha > \frac{n-1}{5}$  (as  $\log_{10} \alpha = \log_{10} \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \approx 0.209 > \frac{1}{5}$ ).

If  $b$  is  $k$ -digit decimal number,  $10^{k-1} \leq b < 10^k \Rightarrow k > \log_{10} b > \frac{n-1}{5} \Rightarrow n < 5k + 1$ .

**Lamé's Theorem:** Number of divisions performed in Euclidean GCD computation  $GCD(a, b)$  ( $a \geq b \geq 2, a, b \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) is at most 5 times the number of decimal digits in  $b$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Number of Divisions in Euclidean GCD Computation)

Computation of  $GCD(a, b)$  is done as follows: (Let  $r_0 = a$  and  $r_1 = b$ )

$$r_0 = q_1 r_1 + r_2 \quad (0 < r_2 < r_1, q_1 \geq 1), \quad r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \quad (0 < r_3 < r_2, q_2 \geq 1), \quad r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \quad (0 < r_4 < r_3, q_3 \geq 1)$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \quad \dots \dots \dots \quad \dots \dots \dots$$

$$r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \quad (0 < r_n < r_{n-1}, q_{n-1} \geq 1), \quad r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \quad (q_n \geq 2 \text{ as } r_n < r_{n-1})$$

Estimation of remainders are done as follows: ( $F_n = n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number)

$$(r_n > 0) \Rightarrow r_n \geq 1 = F_2$$

$$(q_n \geq 2) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-1} = q_n r_n \geq 2 \cdot 1 = 2 = F_3$$

$$(q_{n-1} \geq 1) \wedge (r_{n-1} \geq F_3) \wedge (r_n \geq F_2) \Rightarrow r_{n-2} = q_{n-1} r_{n-1} + r_n \geq 1 \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n = F_3 + F_2 = F_4$$

$$\dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots$$

$$(q_3 \geq 1) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \wedge (r_4 \geq F_{n-2}) \Rightarrow r_2 = q_3 r_3 + r_4 \geq 1 \cdot r_3 + r_4 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n$$

$$(q_2 \geq 1) \wedge (r_2 \geq F_n) \wedge (r_3 \geq F_{n-1}) \Rightarrow b = r_1 = q_2 r_2 + r_3 \geq 1 \cdot r_2 + r_3 = F_n + F_{n-1} = F_{n+1}$$

**Important Property of Fibonacci Numbers:**  $F_n > \alpha^{n-2}$  (for  $n \geq 3$ ), where  $\alpha = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$

Let,  $GCD(a, b)$  uses  $n$  Divisions ( $a \geq b \geq 2$ ). So,  $b \geq F_{n+1} > \alpha^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}$ .

$\therefore b > \alpha^{n-1} \Rightarrow \log_{10} b > (n-1) \log_{10} \alpha > \frac{n-1}{5}$  (as  $\log_{10} \alpha = \log_{10} \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \approx 0.209 > \frac{1}{5}$ ).

If  $b$  is  $k$ -digit decimal number,  $10^{k-1} \leq b < 10^k \Rightarrow k > \log_{10} b > \frac{n-1}{5} \Rightarrow n < 5k + 1$ .

**Lamé's Theorem:** Number of divisions performed in Euclidean GCD computation  $GCD(a, b)$  ( $a \geq b \geq 2, a, b \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) is at most 5 times the number of decimal digits in  $b$ .

**Corollary:** Number of divisions,  $n < 1 + 5 \log_{10} b < 9 \log_{10} b \Rightarrow n = O(\log_{10} b)$   
(as,  $b \geq 2 \Rightarrow 4 \log_{10} b \geq \log_{10} 2^4 > 1$ )

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0 \cdot t_n + C_1 \cdot t_{n-1} + C_2 \cdot t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: Complex Conjugate Pair as Roots,  $R_1 = x + iy, R_2 = x - iy$

OR,  $R_1 = r.(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta), R_2 = r.(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)$

where,  $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y}{x})$

( $i = \sqrt{-1}$ )

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: Complex Conjugate Pair as Roots,  $R_1 = x + iy, R_2 = x - iy$

OR,  $R_1 = r.(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta), R_2 = r.(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)$

where,  $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y}{x})$  ( $i = \sqrt{-1}$ )

Exact Solution:  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.(x + iy)^n + A_2.(x - iy)^n$   
 $= (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n [A_1.(\cos(n\theta) + i \sin(n\theta)) + A_2.(\cos(n\theta) - i \sin(n\theta))]$   
 $= (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n [B_1.\cos(n\theta) + B_2.\sin(n\theta)]$ , where  
 $B_1 = (A_2 + A_1), B_2 = i(A_1 - A_2)$  (Here,  $A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2$  are arbitrary constants)

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0 (\neq 0), C_1, C_2 (\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: Complex Conjugate Pair as Roots,  $R_1 = x + iy, R_2 = x - iy$   
OR,  $R_1 = r.(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta), R_2 = r.(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)$   
where,  $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y}{x})$  ( $i = \sqrt{-1}$ )

Exact Solution:  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.(x + iy)^n + A_2.(x - iy)^n$   
 $= (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n [A_1.(\cos(n\theta) + i \sin(n\theta)) + A_2.(\cos(n\theta) - i \sin(n\theta))]$   
 $= (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n [B_1.\cos(n\theta) + B_2.\sin(n\theta)]$ , where  
 $B_1 = (A_2 + A_1), B_2 = i(A_1 - A_2)$  (Here,  $A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2$  are arbitrary constants)

Constant Determination:  $t_0 = D_0 = B_1$  and  $B_2 = \frac{D_1 - D_0.x}{y}$   
because,  $t_1 = D_1 = (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}).(B_1.\cos \theta + B_2.\sin \theta) = (B_1.x + B_2.y)$ .

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: Complex Conjugate Pair as Roots,  $R_1 = x + iy, R_2 = x - iy$   
OR,  $R_1 = r.(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta), R_2 = r.(\cos \theta - i \sin \theta)$   
where,  $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y}{x})$  ( $i = \sqrt{-1}$ )

Exact Solution:  $t_n = A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n = A_1.(x + iy)^n + A_2.(x - iy)^n$   
 $= (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n [A_1.(\cos(n\theta) + i \sin(n\theta)) + A_2.(\cos(n\theta) - i \sin(n\theta))]$   
 $= (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n [B_1.\cos(n\theta) + B_2.\sin(n\theta)]$ , where  
 $B_1 = (A_2 + A_1), B_2 = i(A_1 - A_2)$  (Here,  $A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2$  are arbitrary constants)

Constant Determination:  $t_0 = D_0 = B_1$  and  $B_2 = \frac{D_1 - D_0.x}{y}$   
because,  $t_1 = D_1 = (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}).(B_1.\cos \theta + B_2.\sin \theta) = (B_1.x + B_2.y)$ .

Unique Solution:  $t_n = (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})^n \left[ D_0.\cos(n\theta) + \left( \frac{D_1 - D_0.x}{y} \right).\sin(n\theta) \right]$



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$\text{For } b \in \mathbb{R}^+, D_n = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b & b & b & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & b & b & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & b & b & b & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & b & b & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & b & b & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & b & b & b \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$\text{For } b \in \mathbb{R}^+, D_n = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b & b & b & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & b & b & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & b & b & b & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \dots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & b & b & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & b & b & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & b & b & b \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |b| = b, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b \\ b & b \end{vmatrix} = 0, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 \\ b & b & b \\ 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix} = -b^3 \text{ and}$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$\text{For } b \in \mathbb{R}^+, D_n = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b & b & b & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & b & b & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & b & b & b & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \dots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & b & b & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & b & b & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & b & b & b \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |b| = b, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b \\ b & b \end{vmatrix} = 0, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 \\ b & b & b \\ 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix} = -b^3 \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Recurrence Relation: } D_n = b.D_{n-1} - b.b.D_{n-2} \quad (n \geq 3)$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$\text{For } b \in \mathbb{R}^+, D_n = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b & b & b & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & b & b & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & b & b & b & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & b & b & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & b & b & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & b & b & b \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |b| = b, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b \\ b & b \end{vmatrix} = 0, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 \\ b & b & b \\ 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix} = -b^3 \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Recurrence Relation: } D_n = b \cdot D_{n-1} - b \cdot b \cdot D_{n-2} \quad (n \geq 3)$$

$$\text{Complex Conjugate Pair Roots: } R_1 = b \left[ \frac{1}{2} + i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right], R_2 = b \left[ \frac{1}{2} - i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right]$$

$$\text{Solution: } D_n = b^n \cdot [A_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2} + i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^n + A_2 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2} - i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^n] = b^n [B_1 \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right) + B_2 \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)]$$

$$\text{Constants: } b = D_1 = b \cdot [B_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + B_2 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)]; \quad 0 = D_2 = b^2 \cdot [B_1 \cdot \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + B_2 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)]$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$\text{For } b \in \mathbb{R}^+, D_n = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b & b & b & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & b & b & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & b & b & b & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \dots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & b & b & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & b & b & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & b & b & b \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |b| = b, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b \\ b & b \end{vmatrix} = 0, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} b & b & 0 \\ b & b & b \\ 0 & b & b \end{vmatrix} = -b^3 \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Recurrence Relation: } D_n = b \cdot D_{n-1} - b \cdot b \cdot D_{n-2} \quad (n \geq 3)$$

$$\text{Complex Conjugate Pair Roots: } R_1 = b \left[ \frac{1}{2} + i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right], R_2 = b \left[ \frac{1}{2} - i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right]$$

$$\text{Solution: } D_n = b^n \cdot [A_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2} + i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^n + A_2 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2} - i \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^n] = b^n [B_1 \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right) + B_2 \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)]$$

$$\text{Constants: } b = D_1 = b \cdot [B_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + B_2 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)]; \quad 0 = D_2 = b^2 \cdot [B_1 \cdot \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + B_2 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)]$$

$$\text{Therefore, } \Rightarrow B_1 = 1, B_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \quad \text{implying } D_n = b^n \left[ \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right) \right], n \geq 1$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )

Exact Solution: Forming two linearly independent solutions using,  
 $t_n = A_1.R^n = A_1.\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$  and  $t_n = A_2.g(n).R^n = A_2.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )

Exact Solution: Forming two linearly independent solutions using,

$$t_n = A_1.R^n = A_1.\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n \text{ and } t_n = A_2.g(n).R^n = A_2.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$
$$\Rightarrow C_0.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n + C_1.g(n-1).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-1} + C_2.g(n-2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-2} = 0$$
$$\Rightarrow g(n) - 2.g(n-1) + g(n-2) = 0 \text{ (as, } C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2 \text{ and } C_0, C_1, C_2 \neq 0)$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )

Exact Solution: Forming two linearly independent solutions using,

$$t_n = A_1.R^n = A_1.\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n \text{ and } t_n = A_2.g(n).R^n = A_2.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$
$$\Rightarrow C_0.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n + C_1.g(n-1).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-1} + C_2.g(n-2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-2} = 0$$
$$\Rightarrow g(n) - 2.g(n-1) + g(n-2) = 0 \text{ (as, } C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2 \text{ and } C_0, C_1, C_2 \neq 0)$$

is satisfied by,  $g(n) = an + b$  (constants  $a(\neq 0), b$ , with simplest  $g(n) = n$ )

$$\therefore t_n = (A_1 + A_2.n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )

Exact Solution: Forming two linearly independent solutions using,

$$t_n = A_1.R^n = A_1.\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n \text{ and } t_n = A_2.g(n).R^n = A_2.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$
$$\Rightarrow C_0.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n + C_1.g(n-1).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-1} + C_2.g(n-2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-2} = 0$$
$$\Rightarrow g(n) - 2.g(n-1) + g(n-2) = 0 \text{ (as, } C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2 \text{ and } C_0, C_1, C_2 \neq 0)$$

is satisfied by,  $g(n) = an + b$  (constants  $a(\neq 0), b$ , with simplest  $g(n) = n$ )

$$\therefore t_n = (A_1 + A_2.n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$

Constant Determination:  $t_0 = D_0 = A_1$  and

$$t_1 = D_1 = (A_1 + A_2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) \Rightarrow A_2 = -\frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{C_1}$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )

Exact Solution: Forming two linearly independent solutions using,

$$t_n = A_1.R^n = A_1.\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n \text{ and } t_n = A_2.g(n).R^n = A_2.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$
$$\Rightarrow C_0.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n + C_1.g(n-1).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-1} + C_2.g(n-2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-2} = 0$$
$$\Rightarrow g(n) - 2.g(n-1) + g(n-2) = 0 \text{ (as, } C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2 \text{ and } C_0, C_1, C_2 \neq 0)$$

is satisfied by,  $g(n) = an + b$  (constants  $a(\neq 0), b$ , with simplest  $g(n) = n$ )

$$\therefore t_n = (A_1 + A_2.n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$

Constant Determination:  $t_0 = D_0 = A_1$  and

$$t_1 = D_1 = (A_1 + A_2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) \Rightarrow A_2 = -\frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{C_1}$$

Unique Solution:  $t_n = \left[D_0 - \left(\frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{C_1}\right).n\right].\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = 0$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$ ;  
 $C_0(\neq 0), C_1(\neq 0), C_2(\neq 0)$  and  $D_0, D_1$  all are constants.

Characteristic Equation: Seeking a solution,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ ), after substitution,  
 $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + C_2.c.x^{n-2} = 0 \Rightarrow C_0.x^2 + C_1.x + C_2 = 0$

Equation Roots: 2 Equal Roots,  $R = R_1 = R_2 = -\frac{C_1}{2C_0}$  (here,  $C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2$ )

Exact Solution: Forming two linearly independent solutions using,

$$t_n = A_1.R^n = A_1.\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n \text{ and } t_n = A_2.g(n).R^n = A_2.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$
$$\Rightarrow C_0.g(n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n + C_1.g(n-1).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-1} + C_2.g(n-2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^{n-2} = 0$$
$$\Rightarrow g(n) - 2.g(n-1) + g(n-2) = 0 \text{ (as, } C_1^2 = 4C_0C_2 \text{ and } C_0, C_1, C_2 \neq 0)$$

is satisfied by,  $g(n) = an + b$  (constants  $a(\neq 0), b$ , with simplest  $g(n) = n$ )

$$\therefore t_n = (A_1 + A_2.n).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$$

Constant Determination:  $t_0 = D_0 = A_1$  and

$$t_1 = D_1 = (A_1 + A_2).\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) \Rightarrow A_2 = -\frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{C_1}$$

Unique Solution:  $t_n = \left[D_0 - \left(\frac{2C_0D_1 + C_1D_0}{C_1}\right).n\right].\left(-\frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right)^n$

Generic Solution:  $t_n = (A_1 + A_2.n + A_2.n^2 + \dots + A_{k-1}.n^{k-1}).R^n$ , for all  $k$  equal roots

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \dots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |2| = 2, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 3, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 4 \text{ and}$$



# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |2| = 2, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 3, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 4 \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Recurrence Relation: } D_n = 2D_{n-1} - D_{n-2} \quad (n \geq 3)$$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |2| = 2, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 3, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 4 \text{ and}$$

Recurrence Relation:  $D_n = 2D_{n-1} - D_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ )

Equal Real Roots:  $R = 1$

Solution:  $D_n = (A_1 + A_2 \cdot n) \cdot 1^n = (A_1 + A_2 \cdot n)$

Constants:  $2 = D_1 = A_1 + A_2$ ;  $3 = D_2 = A_1 + 2A_2 \Rightarrow A_1 = A_2 = 1$

# Solving Second-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Finding Value of $n \times n$ Determinant)

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

$$D_1 = |2| = 2, D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 3, D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 4 \text{ and}$$

Recurrence Relation:  $D_n = 2D_{n-1} - D_{n-2}$  ( $n \geq 3$ )

Equal Real Roots:  $R = 1$

Solution:  $D_n = (A_1 + A_2 \cdot n) \cdot 1^n = (A_1 + A_2 \cdot n)$

Constants:  $2 = D_1 = A_1 + A_2$ ;  $3 = D_2 = A_1 + 2A_2 \Rightarrow A_1 = A_2 = 1$

Therefore,  $D_n = 1 + n$ ,  $n \geq 1$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

① **Real Distinct Roots:**  $u$  such roots,  $R_{\alpha_1}, R_{\alpha_2}, \dots, R_{\alpha_u}$



# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

① **Real Distinct Roots:**  $u$  such roots,  $R_{\alpha_1}, R_{\alpha_2}, \dots, R_{\alpha_u}$

② **Complex Conjugate Pair Roots:**  $v$  such root pairs,

$\langle R_{\beta_1}, R_{\beta'_1} \rangle, \langle R_{\beta_2}, R_{\beta'_2} \rangle, \dots, \langle R_{\beta_v}, R_{\beta'_v} \rangle$  having the form,

$\langle R_{\beta_l}, R_{\beta'_l} \rangle = x_l \pm iy_l = r_l(\cos \theta_l \pm i \sin \theta_l)$ , where  $r_l = \sqrt{x_l^2 + y_l^2}$ ,  $\theta_l = \tan^{-1}(y_l/x_l)$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

① **Real Distinct Roots:**  $u$  such roots,  $R_{\alpha_1}, R_{\alpha_2}, \dots, R_{\alpha_u}$

② **Complex Conjugate Pair Roots:**  $v$  such root pairs,  
 $\langle R_{\beta_1}, R_{\beta'_1} \rangle, \langle R_{\beta_2}, R_{\beta'_2} \rangle, \dots, \langle R_{\beta_v}, R_{\beta'_v} \rangle$  having the form,

$\langle R_{\beta_l}, R_{\beta'_l} \rangle = x_l \pm iy_l = r_l(\cos \theta_l \pm i \sin \theta_l)$ , where  $r_l = \sqrt{x_l^2 + y_l^2}$ ,  $\theta_l = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y_l}{x_l})$

③ **Real Equal Roots:**  $w$  such roots,  $R_\gamma = R_{\gamma_1} = R_{\gamma_2} = \dots = R_{\gamma_w}$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )  
After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$   
Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that  
 $C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

① **Real Distinct Roots:**  $u$  such roots,  $R_{\alpha_1}, R_{\alpha_2}, \dots, R_{\alpha_u}$

② **Complex Conjugate Pair Roots:**  $v$  such root pairs,  
 $\langle R_{\beta_1}, R_{\beta'_1} \rangle, \langle R_{\beta_2}, R_{\beta'_2} \rangle, \dots, \langle R_{\beta_v}, R_{\beta'_v} \rangle$  having the form,

$$\langle R_{\beta_l}, R_{\beta'_l} \rangle = x_l \pm iy_l = r_l(\cos \theta_l \pm i \sin \theta_l), \text{ where } r_l = \sqrt{x_l^2 + y_l^2}, \theta_l = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y_l}{x_l}\right)$$

③ **Real Equal Roots:**  $w$  such roots,  $R_\gamma = R_{\gamma_1} = R_{\gamma_2} = \dots = R_{\gamma_w}$

**Generic Solution:**  $t_n = \sum_{l=1}^u A_{\alpha_l}.R_{\alpha_l}^n + \sum_{l=1}^v (A_{\beta_l}.R_{\beta_l}^n + A_{\beta'_l}.R_{\beta'_l}^n) + R_\gamma^n \cdot \sum_{l=1}^w A_{\gamma_l}.n^{l-1}$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

① **Real Distinct Roots:**  $u$  such roots,  $R_{\alpha_1}, R_{\alpha_2}, \dots, R_{\alpha_u}$

② **Complex Conjugate Pair Roots:**  $v$  such root pairs,  
 $\langle R_{\beta_1}, R_{\beta'_1} \rangle, \langle R_{\beta_2}, R_{\beta'_2} \rangle, \dots, \langle R_{\beta_v}, R_{\beta'_v} \rangle$  having the form,

$\langle R_{\beta_l}, R_{\beta'_l} \rangle = x_l \pm iy_l = r_l(\cos \theta_l \pm i \sin \theta_l)$ , where  $r_l = \sqrt{x_l^2 + y_l^2}$ ,  $\theta_l = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y_l}{x_l})$

③ **Real Equal Roots:**  $w$  such roots,  $R_\gamma = R_{\gamma_1} = R_{\gamma_2} = \dots = R_{\gamma_w}$

**Generic Solution:**  $t_n = \sum_{l=1}^u A_{\alpha_l}.R_{\alpha_l}^n + \sum_{l=1}^v (A_{\beta_l}.R_{\beta_l}^n + A_{\beta'_l}.R_{\beta'_l}^n) + R_\gamma^n \cdot \sum_{l=1}^w A_{\gamma_l}.n^{l-1}$   
 $= \sum_{l=1}^u A_{\alpha_l}.R_{\alpha_l}^n + \sum_{l=1}^v r_l^n \cdot (B_{\beta_l} \cdot \cos n\theta_l + B_{\beta'_l} \cdot \sin n\theta_l) + R_\gamma^n \cdot \sum_{l=1}^w A_{\gamma_l}.n^{l-1}$

# Higher-Order Linear Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) = 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants,  
and  $t_n$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) be a discrete function. ( $f(n) \neq 0$  for non-homogeneous)

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Characteristic Equation:** Seeking a solution as,  $t_n = c.x^n$  ( $c, x \neq 0$ )

After substitution,  $C_0.c.x^n + C_1.c.x^{n-1} + \dots + C_k.c.x^{n-k} = 0$

Since  $c, x \neq 0$ , so  $C_0.x^k + C_1.x^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.x + C_k = 0$

**Characteristic Roots:**  $k$  roots as,  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_k$ , such that

$C_0.R_i^k + C_1.R_i^{k-1} + \dots + C_{k-1}.R_i + C_k = 0$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq k$

**Classification of Roots:** ( $u + 2v + w = k$  and  $1 \leq \alpha_i, \beta_i, \beta'_i, \gamma_i \leq k$ )

① **Real Distinct Roots:**  $u$  such roots,  $R_{\alpha_1}, R_{\alpha_2}, \dots, R_{\alpha_u}$

② **Complex Conjugate Pair Roots:**  $v$  such root pairs,  
 $\langle R_{\beta_1}, R_{\beta'_1} \rangle, \langle R_{\beta_2}, R_{\beta'_2} \rangle, \dots, \langle R_{\beta_v}, R_{\beta'_v} \rangle$  having the form,

$\langle R_{\beta_l}, R_{\beta'_l} \rangle = x_l \pm iy_l = r_l(\cos \theta_l \pm i \sin \theta_l)$ , where  $r_l = \sqrt{x_l^2 + y_l^2}$ ,  $\theta_l = \tan^{-1}(\frac{y_l}{x_l})$

③ **Real Equal Roots:**  $w$  such roots,  $R_\gamma = R_{\gamma_1} = R_{\gamma_2} = \dots = R_{\gamma_w}$

**Generic Solution:**  $t_n = \sum_{l=1}^u A_{\alpha_l}.R_{\alpha_l}^n + \sum_{l=1}^v (A_{\beta_l}.R_{\beta_l}^n + A_{\beta'_l}.R_{\beta'_l}^n) + R_\gamma^n \cdot \sum_{l=1}^w A_{\gamma_l}.n^{l-1}$   
 $= \sum_{l=1}^u A_{\alpha_l}.R_{\alpha_l}^n + \sum_{l=1}^v r_l^n \cdot (B_{\beta_l} \cdot \cos n\theta_l + B_{\beta'_l} \cdot \sin n\theta_l) + R_\gamma^n \cdot \sum_{l=1}^w A_{\gamma_l}.n^{l-1}$

( $A_{\alpha_l}, A_{\beta_l}, A_{\beta'_l}, A_{\gamma_l}, B_{\beta_l}, B_{\beta'_l}$  are constants and  $B_{\beta_l} = A_{\beta_l} + A_{\beta'_l}$ ,  $B_{\beta'_l} = i(A_{\beta_l} - A_{\beta'_l})$ ,  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ )

## Example (Tiling Problem)

Let,  $t_n$  = number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard

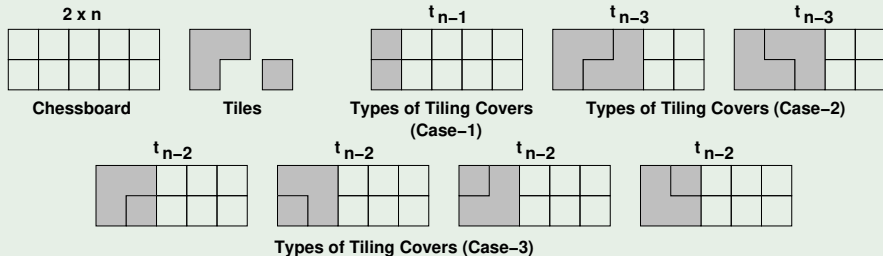
Tile Types: one L-shaped and one  $1 \times 1$

# Solving Third-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Tiling Problem)

Let,  $t_n =$  number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard

Tile Types: one L-shaped and one  $1 \times 1$

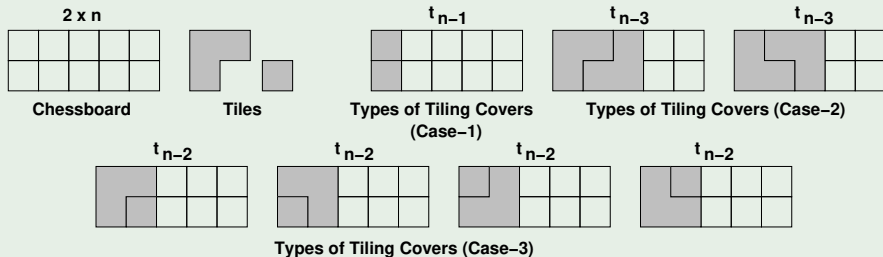


# Solving Third-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Tiling Problem)

Let,  $t_n$  = number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard

Tile Types: one L-shaped and one  $1 \times 1$



Recurrence Relation:  $t_n = t_{n-1} + 4t_{n-2} + 2t_{n-3}$  ( $n \geq 4$ ) and  $t_1 = 1, t_2 = 5, t_3 = 11$

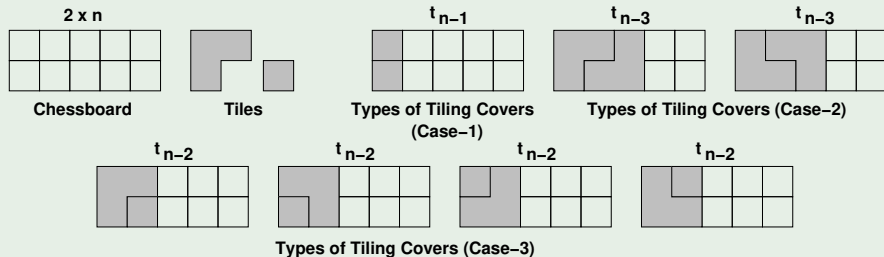


# Solving Third-Order Recurrence Relations

## Example (Tiling Problem)

Let,  $t_n$  = number of ways to tile  $2 \times n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ) chessboard

Tile Types: one L-shaped and one  $1 \times 1$



Recurrence Relation:  $t_n = t_{n-1} + 4t_{n-2} + 2t_{n-3}$  ( $n \geq 4$ ) and  $t_1 = 1, t_2 = 5, t_3 = 11$

Characteristics Roots:  $R_1 = -1, R_2 = 1 + \sqrt{3}, R_3 = 1 - \sqrt{3}$

Solution:  $t_n = 1 \cdot (-1)^n + \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot (1 + \sqrt{3})^n + \left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot (1 - \sqrt{3})^n$

$$= (-1)^n + \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot [(1 + \sqrt{3})^n - (1 - \sqrt{3})^n], \quad n \geq 1$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$

(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$

(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part:  $t_n^{(h)} = A.(-C)^n$  ( $A$  is an arbitrary constant)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$

(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part:  $t_n^{(h)} = A.(-C)^n$  ( $A$  is an arbitrary constant)

Particular Solution Part:  $t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ A_2.n.B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$  ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$

(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part:  $t_n^{(h)} = A.(-C)^n$  ( $A$  is an arbitrary constant)

Particular Solution Part:  $t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ A_2.n.B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$  ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A.(-C)^n + A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ (A + A_2.n).B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$

(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part:  $t_n^{(h)} = A.(-C)^n$  ( $A$  is an arbitrary constant)

Particular Solution Part:  $t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ A_2.n.B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$  ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A.(-C)^n + A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ (A + A_2.n).B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$

Constant Determination:  $A_1.B^n + C.A_1.B^{n-1} = K.B^n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{K.B}{B+C}$

$A_2.n.B^n + C.A_2.(n-1).B^{n-1} = K.B^n \Rightarrow A_2 = K$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$

(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part:  $t_n^{(h)} = A.(-C)^n$  ( $A$  is an arbitrary constant)

Particular Solution Part:  $t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ A_2.n.B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$  ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A.(-C)^n + A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ (A + A_2.n).B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$

Constant Determination:  $A_1.B^n + C.A_1.B^{n-1} = K.B^n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{K.B}{B+C}$

$A_2.n.B^n + C.A_2.(n-1).B^{n-1} = K.B^n \Rightarrow A_2 = K$

Finally,  $t_0 = D = \begin{cases} A + A_1 & \Rightarrow A = \frac{DB+DC-KB}{B+C} \\ A & \Rightarrow A = D \end{cases}$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## First-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C.t_{n-1} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0)$ ,  $C(\neq 0)$ ,  $D, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part:  $t_n^{(h)} = A.(-C)^n$  ( $A$  is an arbitrary constant)

Particular Solution Part:  $t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ A_2.n.B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$  ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A.(-C)^n + A_1.B^n, & \text{if } B^n \neq (-C)^n \\ (A + A_2.n).B^n, & \text{if } B^n = (-C)^n \end{cases}$

Constant Determination:  $A_1.B^n + C.A_1.B^{n-1} = K.B^n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{K.B}{B+C}$

$A_2.n.B^n + C.A_2.(n-1).B^{n-1} = K.B^n \Rightarrow A_2 = K$

Finally,  $t_0 = D = \begin{cases} A + A_1 & \Rightarrow A = \frac{DB+DC-KB}{B+C} \\ A & \Rightarrow A = D \end{cases}$

Unique Solution:  $t_n = \begin{cases} \left(\frac{DB+DC-KB}{B+C}\right).(-C)^n + \left(\frac{KB}{B+C}\right)B^n \\ (D + K.n).B^n = (D + K.n).(-C)^n \end{cases}, \quad n \geq 1$



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A.2^n$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $T_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_1 = -1$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $T_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_1 = -1$

**Final Solution:**  $T_n = A \cdot 2^n - 1$ , with  $T_0 = 0 = A \cdot 2^0 - 1 \Rightarrow A = 1$ ,

implying  $T_n = 2^n - 1$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $T_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_1 = -1$

**Final Solution:**  $T_n = A \cdot 2^n - 1$ , with  $T_0 = 0 = A \cdot 2^0 - 1 \Rightarrow A = 1$ ,

implying  $T_n = 2^n - 1$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

## Example (Comparisons to find Min-Max from $2^n$ Element Set)

**Strategy for  $M_n$ :** Divide  $2^n$ -element set into two. Find Min-Max from both sets + two comparisons (Max-vs-Max and Min-vs-Min) from chosen Min-Max elements of each set.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $M_n = 2M_{n-1} + 2$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $M_1 = 1$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $T_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_1 = -1$

**Final Solution:**  $T_n = A \cdot 2^n - 1$ , with  $T_0 = 0 = A \cdot 2^0 - 1 \Rightarrow A = 1$ ,  
implying  $T_n = 2^n - 1$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

## Example (Comparisons to find Min-Max from $2^n$ Element Set)

**Strategy for  $M_n$ :** Divide  $2^n$ -element set into two. Find Min-Max from both sets + two comparisons (Max-vs-Max and Min-vs-Min) from chosen Min-Max elements of each set.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $M_n = 2M_{n-1} + 2$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $M_1 = 1$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $M_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $T_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_1 = -1$

**Final Solution:**  $T_n = A \cdot 2^n - 1$ , with  $T_0 = 0 = A \cdot 2^0 - 1 \Rightarrow A = 1$ ,

implying  $T_n = 2^n - 1$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

## Example (Comparisons to find Min-Max from $2^n$ Element Set)

**Strategy for  $M_n$ :** Divide  $2^n$ -element set into two. Find Min-Max from both sets + two comparisons (Max-vs-Max and Min-vs-Min) from chosen Min-Max elements of each set.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $M_n = 2M_{n-1} + 2$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $M_1 = 1$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $M_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $M_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 2 \Rightarrow A_1 = -2$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Towers of Hanoi Problem)

**Strategy for  $T_n$ :** Moving  $n$  disks with 3 pegs requires – (i) twice the movement of  $(n - 1)$  disks, and (ii) once the movement of the largest disk.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $T_n = 2T_{n-1} + 1$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $T_0 = 0$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $T_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $T_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_1 = -1$

**Final Solution:**  $T_n = A \cdot 2^n - 1$ , with  $T_0 = 0 = A \cdot 2^0 - 1 \Rightarrow A = 1$ ,  
implying  $T_n = 2^n - 1$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

## Example (Comparisons to find Min-Max from $2^n$ Element Set)

**Strategy for  $M_n$ :** Divide  $2^n$ -element set into two. Find Min-Max from both sets + two comparisons (Max-vs-Max and Min-vs-Min) from chosen Min-Max elements of each set.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $M_n = 2M_{n-1} + 2$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $M_1 = 1$

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $M_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 2^n$

**Particular Solution:**  $M_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 1^n = A_1$ , hence  $A_1 = 2A_1 + 2 \Rightarrow A_1 = -2$

**Final Solution:**  $M_n = A \cdot 2^n - 2$ , with  $M_1 = 1 = A \cdot 2^1 - 2 \Rightarrow A = \frac{3}{2}$ ,  
implying  $M_n = (\frac{3}{2}) \cdot 2^n - 2$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.

Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.

Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.

Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A.8^n$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.

Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 8^n$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , hence  $10A_1 = 8A_1 + 10 \Rightarrow A_1 = 5$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.

Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 8^n$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , hence  $10A_1 = 8A_1 + 10 \Rightarrow A_1 = 5$

Final Solution:  $S_n = A \cdot 8^n + 5 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , with  $S_1 = 9 = 8A + 5 \Rightarrow A = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  
implying  $S_n = (\frac{1}{2}) \cdot 8^n + 5 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.  
Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 8^n$

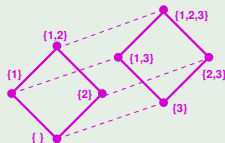
Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , hence  $10A_1 = 8A_1 + 10 \Rightarrow A_1 = 5$

Final Solution:  $S_n = A \cdot 8^n + 5 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , with  $S_1 = 9 = 8A + 5 \Rightarrow A = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  
implying  $S_n = (\frac{1}{2}) \cdot 8^n + 5 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .

## Example (Edges in Hasse Diagram)

$\mathcal{P}(S)$  = Power Set of  $n$ -element set  $S$  forming Poset  $(\mathcal{P}(S), \subseteq)$ .

$E_n$  = number of edges in Hasse Diagram in poset  $(\mathcal{P}(S), \subseteq)$



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.  
Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 8^n$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = A_1 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , hence  $10A_1 = 8A_1 + 10 \Rightarrow A_1 = 5$

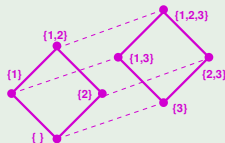
Final Solution:  $S_n = A \cdot 8^n + 5 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ , with  $S_1 = 9 = 8A + 5 \Rightarrow A = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  
implying  $S_n = (\frac{1}{2}) \cdot 8^n + 5 \cdot 10^{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .

## Example (Edges in Hasse Diagram)

$\mathcal{P}(S)$  = Power Set of  $n$ -element set  $S$  forming Poset  $(\mathcal{P}(S), \subseteq)$ .

$E_n$  = number of edges in Hasse Diagram in poset  $(\mathcal{P}(S), \subseteq)$

Recurrence Relation:  $E_{n+1} = 2E_n + 2^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $E_1 = 1$



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Strings with Digits containing Even Number of 1s)

$S_n$  = number of  $n$ -length strings constructed using  $\Sigma = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, 9\}$  having even 1s.  
Two ways to contribute to  $S_n$ :

- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is not 1:  $S_{n-1}$  ways for each 9 such cases.
- $n^{\text{th}}$  symbol is 1: Odd number of 1s in  $(n-1)$ -length part =  $(10^{n-1} - S_{n-1})$

Recurrence Relation:  $S_n = 9S_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - S_{n-1}) = 8S_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  
 $S_1 = 9$  (all digits except 1)

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A.8^n$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = A_1.10^{n-1}$ , hence  $10A_1 = 8A_1 + 10 \Rightarrow A_1 = 5$

Final Solution:  $S_n = A.8^n + 5.10^{n-1}$ , with  $S_1 = 9 = 8A + 5 \Rightarrow A = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  
implying  $S_n = (\frac{1}{2}).8^n + 5.10^{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .

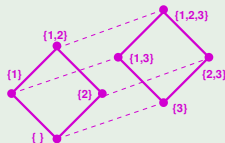
## Example (Edges in Hasse Diagram)

$\mathcal{P}(S)$  = Power Set of  $n$ -element set  $S$  forming Poset  $(\mathcal{P}(S), \subseteq)$ .

$E_n$  = number of edges in Hasse Diagram in poset  $(\mathcal{P}(S), \subseteq)$

Recurrence Relation:  $E_{n+1} = 2E_n + 2^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $E_1 = 1$

Solution:  $E_n = E_n^{(h)} + E_n^{(p)} = A.2^n + A_1.n.2^n$  with  $A = 0, A_1 = \frac{1}{2}$   
implies  $E_n = n.2^{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$



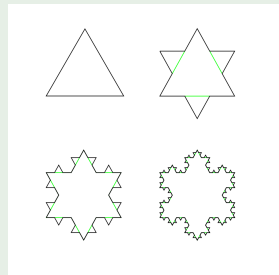


# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

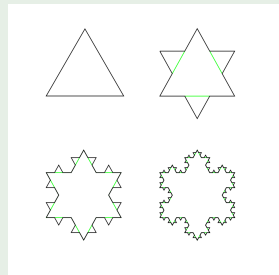
$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$$

(3-sided),

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

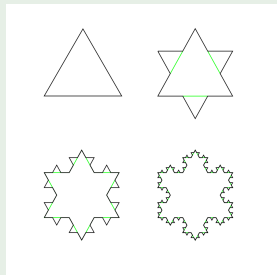
$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

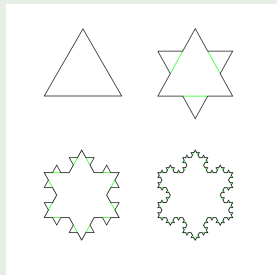
Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

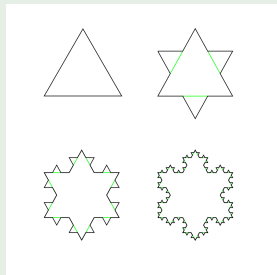
$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

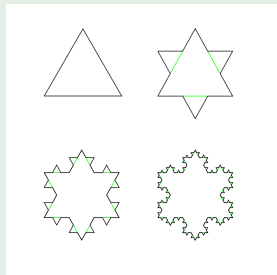
$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

Recurrence Relation:

$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

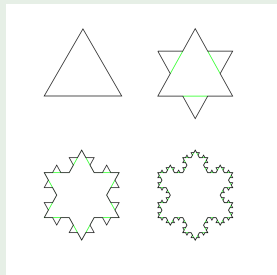
$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

Recurrence Relation:

$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

$$\text{Solution: } a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

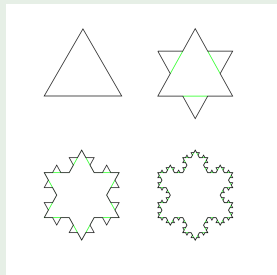
Recurrence Relation:

$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

$$\text{Solution: } a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n$$

$$\text{So, } B = \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = A + \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)





# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

Recurrence Relation:

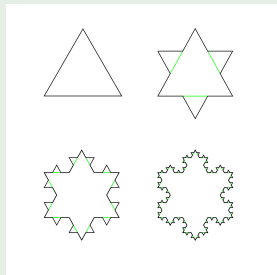
$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

$$\text{Solution: } a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n$$

$$\text{So, } B = \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = A + \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}$$

$$\text{Now, } a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{-1} \Rightarrow A = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}}$$

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

Recurrence Relation:

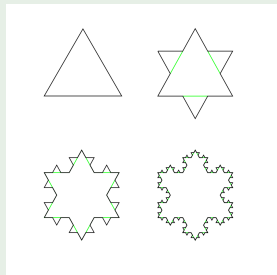
$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

$$\text{Solution: } a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n$$

$$\text{So, } B = \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = A + \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}$$

$$\text{Now, } a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{-1} \Rightarrow A = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\text{Finally, } a_n = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}} - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left[6 - \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}\right], \quad n \geq 0$$



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

Recurrence Relation:

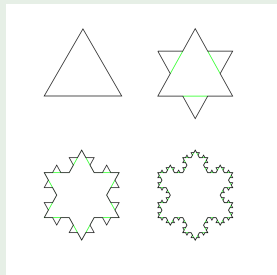
$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

$$\text{Solution: } a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n$$

$$\text{So, } B = \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = A + \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}$$

$$\text{Now, } a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{-1} \Rightarrow A = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\text{Finally, } a_n = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}} - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left[6 - \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}\right], \quad n \geq 0$$



## Generalized Recurrence Relations for Area under Regular Polygon Fractals

$$\text{For 4-sided (unit-length) Regular Polygon: } a_{n+1} = a_n + 5^n \cdot 4 \cdot 1 \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{4}{9}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{5}{9}\right)^n$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Area under a Snowflake – Concept of Fractals)

$a_n$  = area of 3-sided regular polygon after  $n$  transforms

(Koch's Snowflake, 1904)

Formulating the Recurrence Relation:

$$a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \quad (3\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} + 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3}\right]^2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \quad (4 \times 3 = 12\text{-sided}),$$

$$a_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} + 4^1 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^2}\right]^2 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} \quad (4^2 \times 3 = 48\text{-sided})$$

$$a_3 = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{27} + 4^2 \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^3}\right]^2 \quad (4^3 \times 3 = 192\text{-sided})$$

Recurrence Relation:

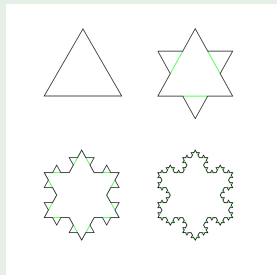
$$a_{n+1} = a_n + 4^n \cdot 3 \cdot \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right) \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

Solution:  $a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A + B \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n$

So,  $B = \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right)$  and  $a_n = A + \left(-\frac{9}{5}\right) \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^n = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}$

Now,  $a_0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} = A - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{-1} \Rightarrow A = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}}$

Finally,  $a_n = \frac{6}{5\sqrt{3}} - \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1} = \left(\frac{1}{5\sqrt{3}}\right) \left[6 - \left(\frac{4}{9}\right)^{n-1}\right], \quad n \geq 0$



## Generalized Recurrence Relations for Area under Regular Polygon Fractals

For 4-sided (unit-length) Regular Polygon:  $a_{n+1} = a_n + 5^n \cdot 4 \cdot 1 \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2 = a_n + \left(\frac{4}{9}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{5}{9}\right)^n$

For  $k$ -sided ( $m$ -length) Regular Polygon:  $a_{n+1} = a_n + (k+1)^n \cdot k \cdot \left[\frac{m^2 \cdot k}{4 \cdot \tan\left(\frac{180^\circ}{k}\right)}\right] \cdot \left[\frac{1}{3^{n+1}}\right]^2$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0), D_0, D_1, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0), D_0, D_1, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part: ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(h)} = \begin{cases} A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n, & \text{for distinct roots} \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n, & \text{for equal roots} \end{cases}$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0), D_0, D_1, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part: ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(h)} = \begin{cases} A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n, & \text{for distinct roots} \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n, & \text{for equal roots} \end{cases}$$

Particular Solution Part: ( $A', A'', A'''$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0), D_0, D_1, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part: ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(h)} = \begin{cases} A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n, & \text{for distinct roots} \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n, & \text{for equal roots} \end{cases}$$

Particular Solution Part: ( $A', A'', A'''$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} =$

$$\begin{cases} (A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n) + A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ (A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n) + A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n + A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n + A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0), D_0, D_1, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part: ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(h)} = \begin{cases} A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n, & \text{for distinct roots} \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n, & \text{for equal roots} \end{cases}$$

Particular Solution Part: ( $A', A'', A'''$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} =$

$$\begin{cases} (A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n) + A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ (A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n) + A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n + A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n + A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$

Constant Determination: *Left For You as an Exercise!*

Unique Solution: *Left For You as an Exercise!*

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Second-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

General Form:  $t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} = K.B^n$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $t_0 = D_0, t_1 = D_1$   
(Here,  $B(\neq 0), C_1, C_2(\neq 0), D_0, D_1, K$  are all arbitrary constants)

Homogeneous Solution Part: ( $A_1, A_2$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(h)} = \begin{cases} A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n, & \text{for distinct roots} \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n, & \text{for equal roots} \end{cases}$$

Particular Solution Part: ( $A', A'', A'''$  are constants)

$$t_n^{(p)} = \begin{cases} A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$

Exact Solution:  $t_n = t_n^{(h)} + t_n^{(p)} =$

$$\begin{cases} (A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n) + A'.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R_1 \neq B \neq R_2 \\ (A_1.R_1^n + A_2.R_2^n) + A''.n.B^n, & \text{for distinct roots when } R = R_1 \text{ or } R = R_2 \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n + A'.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B \neq R \\ (A_1 + A_2.n).R^n + A'''.n^2.B^n, & \text{for equal roots when } B = R \end{cases}$$

Constant Determination: *Left For You as an Exercise!*

Unique Solution: *Left For You as an Exercise!*

Homework: *What happens for Complex Conjugate Pair Roots ?*

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A \cdot n \cdot 1^n = A \cdot n$

$$\text{Hence, } (n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1.3^n + A_2.1^n = A_1.3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A.n.1^n = A.n$

Hence,  $(n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$

Final Solution:  $t_n = A_1.3^n + A_2 + 100n = 100.3^n + 2900 + 100n, n \geq 0$

(as  $t_0 = 3000 = A_1 + A_2$ ,  $t_1 = 3300 = 3.A_1 + A_2 + 100$  produces  $A_1 = 100, A_2 = 2900$ )

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A \cdot n \cdot 1^n = A \cdot n$

$$\text{Hence, } (n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$$

Final Solution:  $t_n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 + 100n = 100 \cdot 3^n + 2900 + 100n, n \geq 0$

(as  $t_0 = 3000 = A_1 + A_2$ ,  $t_1 = 3300 = 3A_1 + A_2 + 100$  produces  $A_1 = 100, A_2 = 2900$ )

Example (Total Additions to Compute Fibonacci Number)

$a_n =$  total number of additions to compute  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A \cdot n \cdot 1^n = A \cdot n$

Hence,  $(n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$

Final Solution:  $t_n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 + 100n = 100 \cdot 3^n + 2900 + 100n$ ,  $n \geq 0$

(as  $t_0 = 3000 = A_1 + A_2$ ,  $t_1 = 3300 = 3 \cdot A_1 + A_2 + 100$  produces  $A_1 = 100, A_2 = 2900$ )

Example (Total Additions to Compute Fibonacci Number)

$a_n$  = total number of additions to compute  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number

Recurrence Relation:  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + 1$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $a_0 = a_1 = 0$  (initial cases)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A \cdot n \cdot 1^n = A \cdot n$

$$\text{Hence, } (n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$$

Final Solution:  $t_n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 + 100n = 100 \cdot 3^n + 2900 + 100n$ ,  $n \geq 0$

(as  $t_0 = 3000 = A_1 + A_2$ ,  $t_1 = 3300 = 3A_1 + A_2 + 100$  produces  $A_1 = 100$ ,  $A_2 = 2900$ )

Example (Total Additions to Compute Fibonacci Number)

$a_n$  = total number of additions to compute  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number

Recurrence Relation:  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + 1$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $a_0 = a_1 = 0$  (initial cases)

Homogeneous Solution:  $a_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + A_2 \cdot \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A \cdot n \cdot 1^n = A \cdot n$

$$\text{Hence, } (n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$$

Final Solution:  $t_n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 + 100n = 100 \cdot 3^n + 2900 + 100n$ ,  $n \geq 0$

(as  $t_0 = 3000 = A_1 + A_2$ ,  $t_1 = 3300 = 3 \cdot A_1 + A_2 + 100$  produces  $A_1 = 100$ ,  $A_2 = 2900$ )

Example (Total Additions to Compute Fibonacci Number)

$a_n$  = total number of additions to compute  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number

Recurrence Relation:  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + 1$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $a_0 = a_1 = 0$  (initial cases)

Homogeneous Solution:  $a_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + A_2 \cdot \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$

Particular Solution:  $a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$ , hence  $A = A + A + 1 \Rightarrow A = -1$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Solve:  $t_{n+2} - 4t_{n+1} + 3t_n = -200$  ( $n \geq 0$ ),  $t_0 = 3000$ ,  $t_1 = 3300$ )

Characteristic Roots (Homogeneous Consideration):  $R_1 = 3, R_2 = 1$

Homogeneous Solution:  $t_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 \cdot 1^n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2$

Particular Solution:  $t_n^{(p)} = A \cdot n \cdot 1^n = A \cdot n$

$$\text{Hence, } (n+2)A - 4(n+1)A + 3nA = -200 \Rightarrow A = 100$$

Final Solution:  $t_n = A_1 \cdot 3^n + A_2 + 100n = 100 \cdot 3^n + 2900 + 100n$ ,  $n \geq 0$

(as  $t_0 = 3000 = A_1 + A_2$ ,  $t_1 = 3300 = 3 \cdot A_1 + A_2 + 100$  produces  $A_1 = 100$ ,  $A_2 = 2900$ )

Example (Total Additions to Compute Fibonacci Number)

$a_n$  = total number of additions to compute  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number

Recurrence Relation:  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + 1$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $a_0 = a_1 = 0$  (initial cases)

Homogeneous Solution:  $a_n^{(h)} = A_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + A_2 \cdot \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$

Particular Solution:  $a_n^{(p)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$ , hence  $A = A + A + 1 \Rightarrow A = -1$

Final Solution:  $a_n = A_1 \cdot \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + A_2 \cdot \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n - 1$ , with  $A_1 = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $A_2 = -\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2\sqrt{5}}$ ,  
 $\Rightarrow a_n = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2\sqrt{5}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n - \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2\sqrt{5}}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n - 1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+1} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+1} - 1$ ,  $n \geq 0$

## Higher-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \cdots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) \neq 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants.

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

## Higher-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0 \cdot t_n + C_1 \cdot t_{n-1} + C_2 \cdot t_{n-2} + \cdots + C_k \cdot t_{n-k} = f(n) \neq 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0 (\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k (\neq 0)$  are real constants.

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $t_n^{(h)}$  (computed assuming  $f(n) = 0$  as earlier)

## Higher-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) \neq 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0(\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k(\neq 0)$  are real constants.

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $t_n^{(h)}$  (computed assuming  $f(n) = 0$  as earlier)

**Particular Solution:** Three cases to consider while constructing  $t_n^{(p)}$ :

# Higher-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) \neq 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0(\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k(\neq 0)$  are real constants.

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $t_n^{(h)}$  (computed assuming  $f(n) = 0$  as earlier)

**Particular Solution:** Three cases to consider while constructing  $t_n^{(p)}$ :

- 1. Format of  $f(n)$  is a constant multiple of following table (middle column) and is NOT associated with form of  $t_n^{(h)}$ :

Types	Format of $f(n)$	Format for $t_n^{(p)}$
Type-1	$n^m.R^n$ ( $m \in \mathbb{N}, R \in \mathbb{R}$ )	$R^n.(\sum_{i=0}^m A_i.n^i)$
Type-2	$R^n.\sin(n\theta)$ or $R^n.\cos(n\theta)$	$R^n.(A_1.\sin(n\theta) + A_2.\cos(n\theta))$



# Higher-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) \neq 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0(\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k(\neq 0)$  are real constants.

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $t_n^{(h)}$  (computed assuming  $f(n) = 0$  as earlier)

**Particular Solution:** Three cases to consider while constructing  $t_n^{(p)}$ :

- 1 **Format of  $f(n)$  is a constant multiple of following table (middle column) and is NOT associated with form of  $t_n^{(h)}$ :**

Types	Format of $f(n)$	Format for $t_n^{(p)}$
Type-1	$n^m . R^n$ ( $m \in \mathbb{N}, R \in \mathbb{R}$ )	$R^n . (\sum_{i=0}^m A_i . n^i)$
Type-2	$R^n . \sin(n\theta)$ or $R^n . \cos(n\theta)$	$R^n . (A_1 . \sin(n\theta) + A_2 . \cos(n\theta))$

- 2 **Format of  $f(n)$  is the sum of constant multiples of above table (middle column) and is NOT associated with form of  $t_n^{(h)}$ :**  
Take  $t_n^{(p)}$  as the sum of above table entries (right columns)

# Higher-Order Linear Non-Homogeneous Recurrence with Constant Coefficients

**General Form:**  $C_0.t_n + C_1.t_{n-1} + C_2.t_{n-2} + \dots + C_k.t_{n-k} = f(n) \neq 0$ , for  $n \geq k$   
 where the order  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $C_0(\neq 0)$ ,  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k(\neq 0)$  are real constants.

**Boundary Condition:**  $t_j = D_j$ , for each  $0 \leq j \leq k - 1$  and every  $D_j$  is a constant

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $t_n^{(h)}$  (computed assuming  $f(n) = 0$  as earlier)

**Particular Solution:** Three cases to consider while constructing  $t_n^{(p)}$ :

- Format of  $f(n)$  is a constant multiple of following table (middle column) and is NOT associated with form of  $t_n^{(h)}$ :

Types	Format of $f(n)$	Format for $t_n^{(p)}$
Type-1	$n^m \cdot R^n$ ( $m \in \mathbb{N}, R \in \mathbb{R}$ )	$R^n \cdot (\sum_{i=0}^m A_i \cdot n^i)$
Type-2	$R^n \cdot \sin(n\theta)$ or $R^n \cdot \cos(n\theta)$	$R^n \cdot (A_1 \cdot \sin(n\theta) + A_2 \cdot \cos(n\theta))$

- Format of  $f(n)$  is the sum of constant multiples of above table (middle column) and is NOT associated with form of  $t_n^{(h)}$ :

Take  $t_n^{(p)}$  as the sum of above table entries (right columns)

- A summand  $f'(n)$  from  $f(n)$  is an associated solution in  $t_n^{(h)}$ :
  - Format of  $f'(n)$  is of Type-1 from above table:  
 $t_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^s \cdot t_n^{(p)}$ , i.e. multiply with smallest  $s$  so that no summand of  $n^s \cdot f'(n)$  is associated with  $t_n^{(h)}$ .
  - Format of  $f'(n)$  is of Type-2 from above table: Left as Exercise!

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1 \cdot (A_1 \cdot n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1 \cdot H_n^{(p)}$ )

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1.(A_1.n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1.H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2.A_1 + (n+1).A_0 = n^2.A_1 + n.A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1 \cdot (A_1 \cdot n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1 \cdot H_n^{(p)}$ )

Hence,  $(n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1) \cdot A_0 = n^2 \cdot A_1 + n \cdot A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$

Final Solution:  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

implying,  $H_n = \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1 \cdot (A_1 \cdot n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1 \cdot H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1) \cdot A_0 = n^2 \cdot A_1 + n \cdot A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Final Solution:  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

## Example (Regions formed by Non-parallel Non-colinear Straight Lines)

$L_n$  = number of regions formed by  $n$  non-parallel and non-colinear straight lines.

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

**Homogeneous Solution:**  $H_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

**Particular Solution:**  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1 \cdot (A_1 \cdot n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1 \cdot H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1) \cdot A_0 = n^2 \cdot A_1 + n \cdot A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

**Final Solution:**  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

## Example (Regions formed by Non-parallel Non-colinear Straight Lines)

$L_n$  = number of regions formed by  $n$  non-parallel and non-colinear straight lines.

**Recurrence Relation:**  $L_{n+1} = L_n + (n+1)$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $L_0 = 1$  (whole 2-D plane)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1.(A_1.n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1.H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2.A_1 + (n+1).A_0 = n^2.A_1 + n.A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Final Solution:  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2}.n^2 - \frac{1}{2}.n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = \frac{1}{2}.n^2 - \frac{1}{2}.n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

## Example (Regions formed by Non-parallel Non-colinear Straight Lines)

$L_n$  = number of regions formed by  $n$  non-parallel and non-colinear straight lines.

Recurrence Relation:  $L_{n+1} = L_n + (n+1)$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $L_0 = 1$  (whole 2-D plane)

Homogeneous Solution:  $L_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1.(A_1.n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1.H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2.A_1 + (n+1).A_0 = n^2.A_1 + n.A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Final Solution:  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2}.n^2 - \frac{1}{2}.n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = \frac{1}{2}.n^2 - \frac{1}{2}.n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

## Example (Regions formed by Non-parallel Non-colinear Straight Lines)

$L_n$  = number of regions formed by  $n$  non-parallel and non-colinear straight lines.

Recurrence Relation:  $L_{n+1} = L_n + (n+1)$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $L_0 = 1$  (whole 2-D plane)

Homogeneous Solution:  $L_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $L_n^{(p)} = n^1.(A_1.n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $L_n^{(h)}$ ,  $L_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1.L_n^{(p)}$ )

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1 \cdot (A_1 \cdot n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1 \cdot H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1) \cdot A_0 = n^2 \cdot A_1 + n \cdot A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Final Solution:  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

## Example (Regions formed by Non-parallel Non-colinear Straight Lines)

$L_n$  = number of regions formed by  $n$  non-parallel and non-colinear straight lines.

Recurrence Relation:  $L_{n+1} = L_n + (n+1)$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $L_0 = 1$  (whole 2-D plane)

Homogeneous Solution:  $L_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $L_n^{(p)} = n^1 \cdot (A_1 \cdot n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $L_n^{(h)}$ ,  $L_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1 \cdot L_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1) \cdot A_0 = n^2 \cdot A_1 + n \cdot A_0 + (n+1) \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2} = A_0$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

## Example (Distinct Handshakes with $n$ Persons)

$H_n$  = number of total distinct pairwise handshakes among  $n$  persons.

Recurrence Relation:  $H_{n+1} = H_n + n$  ( $n \geq 2$ ) and  $H_1 = 0$  (no handshakes with oneself)

Homogeneous Solution:  $H_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $H_n^{(p)} = n^1.(A_1.n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $H_n^{(h)}$ ,  $H_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1.H_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2.A_1 + (n+1).A_0 = n^2.A_1 + n.A_0 + n \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}, A_0 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Final Solution:  $H_n = A + \frac{1}{2}.n^2 - \frac{1}{2}.n$ , with  $H_1 = 0 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = \frac{1}{2}.n^2 - \frac{1}{2}.n = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \binom{n}{2}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

## Example (Regions formed by Non-parallel Non-colinear Straight Lines)

$L_n$  = number of regions formed by  $n$  non-parallel and non-colinear straight lines.

Recurrence Relation:  $L_{n+1} = L_n + (n+1)$  ( $n \geq 1$ ) and  $L_0 = 1$  (whole 2-D plane)

Homogeneous Solution:  $L_n^{(h)} = A.1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $L_n^{(p)} = n^1.(A_1.n + A_0)$  (with  $A$  (const.) in  $L_n^{(h)}$ ,  $L_n^{(p)} \leftarrow n^1.L_n^{(p)}$ )

$$\text{Hence, } (n+1)^2.A_1 + (n+1).A_0 = n^2.A_1 + n.A_0 + (n+1) \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2} = A_0$$

Final Solution:  $L_n = A + \frac{1}{2}.n^2 + \frac{1}{2}.n$ , with  $L_1 = 1 = A$ ,

$$\text{implying, } H_n = 1 + \frac{1}{2}.n^2 + \frac{1}{2}.n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2} + 1, \quad n \geq 0.$$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Deriving Formula for  $S_n = \sum_{i=0}^n i^2$ )

Recurrence Relation:  $S_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)^2$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $S_0 = 0$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Deriving Formula for  $S_n = \sum_{i=0}^n i^2$ )

Recurrence Relation:  $S_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)^2$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $S_0 = 0$

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$



# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Deriving Formula for  $S_n = \sum_{i=0}^n i^2$ )

Recurrence Relation:  $S_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)^2$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $S_0 = 0$

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = n \cdot (A_0 + A_1 \cdot n + A_2 \cdot n^2) = (A_0 \cdot n + A_1 \cdot n^2 + A_2 \cdot n^3)$

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Deriving Formula for  $S_n = \sum_{i=0}^n i^2$ )

Recurrence Relation:  $S_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)^2$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $S_0 = 0$

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = n \cdot (A_0 + A_1 \cdot n + A_2 \cdot n^2) = (A_0 \cdot n + A_1 \cdot n^2 + A_2 \cdot n^3)$

Hence,  $(n+1) \cdot A_0 + (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1)^3 \cdot A_2 = (n \cdot A_0 + n^2 \cdot A_1 + n^3 \cdot A_2) + (n^2 + 2n + 1)$

implies,  $3A_2 + A_1 = A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_2 = \frac{1}{3}$  (comparing coefficients of  $n^2$ )

$3A_2 + 2A_1 + A_0 = A_0 + 2 \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  (comparing coefficients of  $n$ )

$A_2 + A_1 + A_0 = 1 \Rightarrow A_0 = \frac{1}{6}$  (comparing constant coefficients)

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Deriving Formula for  $S_n = \sum_{i=0}^n i^2$ )

Recurrence Relation:  $S_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)^2$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $S_0 = 0$

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = n \cdot (A_0 + A_1 \cdot n + A_2 \cdot n^2) = (A_0 \cdot n + A_1 \cdot n^2 + A_2 \cdot n^3)$

Hence,  $(n+1) \cdot A_0 + (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1)^3 \cdot A_2 = (n \cdot A_0 + n^2 \cdot A_1 + n^3 \cdot A_2) + (n^2 + 2n + 1)$

implies,  $3A_2 + A_1 = A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_2 = \frac{1}{3}$  (comparing coefficients of  $n^2$ )

$3A_2 + 2A_1 + A_0 = A_0 + 2 \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  (comparing coefficients of  $n$ )

$A_2 + A_1 + A_0 = 1 \Rightarrow A_0 = \frac{1}{6}$  (comparing constant coefficients)

Final Solution:  $S_n = A + \frac{1}{6} \cdot n + \frac{1}{3} \cdot n^2 + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^3$ , with  $S_0 = 0 = A$ ,

implying,  $H_n = \frac{1}{6} \cdot n + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot n^3 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

# Solving Non-Homogeneous Recurrence Relations

Example (Deriving Formula for  $S_n = \sum_{i=0}^n i^2$ )

Recurrence Relation:  $S_{n+1} = S_n + (n+1)^2$  ( $n \geq 0$ ) and  $S_0 = 0$

Homogeneous Solution:  $S_n^{(h)} = A \cdot 1^n = A$

Particular Solution:  $S_n^{(p)} = n \cdot (A_0 + A_1 \cdot n + A_2 \cdot n^2) = (A_0 \cdot n + A_1 \cdot n^2 + A_2 \cdot n^3)$

Hence,  $(n+1) \cdot A_0 + (n+1)^2 \cdot A_1 + (n+1)^3 \cdot A_2 = (n \cdot A_0 + n^2 \cdot A_1 + n^3 \cdot A_2) + (n^2 + 2n + 1)$

implies,  $3A_2 + A_1 = A_1 + 1 \Rightarrow A_2 = \frac{1}{3}$  (comparing coefficients of  $n^2$ )

$3A_2 + 2A_1 + A_0 = A_0 + 2 \Rightarrow A_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  (comparing coefficients of  $n$ )

$A_2 + A_1 + A_0 = 1 \Rightarrow A_0 = \frac{1}{6}$  (comparing constant coefficients)

Final Solution:  $S_n = A + \frac{1}{6} \cdot n + \frac{1}{3} \cdot n^2 + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^3$ , with  $S_0 = 0 = A$ ,

implying,  $H_n = \frac{1}{6} \cdot n + \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot n^3 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$ ,  $n \geq 0$ .

Example (Deriving Other Summation Formulas: **Try Yourself!**)

$$(1) \sum_{i=0}^n i = L_n = L_{n-1} + n \quad (2) \sum_{i=0}^n i^3 = C_n = C_{n-1} + n^3$$

$$(3) \sum_{i=0}^n i^4 = Q_n = Q_{n-1} + n^4 \quad (4) \sum_{i=0}^n i^k = G_n = G_{n-1} + n^k \quad (k \in \mathbb{Z}^+)$$

(Here,  $n \geq 1$  and  $L_0 = C_0 = Q_0 = G_0 = 0$ )

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is *never* selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is *at least once* selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is *never* selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is *at least once* selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **at least once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$



# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **at least once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1) \quad (n, r \geq 1)$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^r$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **at least once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$   $(n, r \geq 1)$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^r$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - a(n, 0) = f_{n-1}(x) - a(n - 1, 0) + x \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^{r-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - 1 = f_{n-1}(x) - 1 + x \cdot f_n(x) \Rightarrow f_n(x) = \frac{f_{n-1}(x)}{1-x} = \frac{f_0(x)}{(1-x)^n}$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **at least once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$   $(n, r \geq 1)$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^r$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - a(n, 0) = f_{n-1}(x) - a(n - 1, 0) + x \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^{r-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - 1 = f_{n-1}(x) - 1 + x \cdot f_n(x) \Rightarrow f_n(x) = \frac{f_{n-1}(x)}{1-x} = \frac{f_0(x)}{(1-x)^n}$$

So,  $a(n, r)$  is the coefficient of  $x^r$  in  $f_n(x) = \frac{f_0(x)}{(1-x)^n} = \frac{1}{(1-x)^n} = (1-x)^{-n}$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects with Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (repetition allowed) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **at least once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $n$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$ , ( $n \geq r$  and  $n, r \in \mathbb{N}$ )  
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n, r - 1)$  ( $n, r \geq 1$ )

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^r$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - a(n, 0) = f_{n-1}(x) - a(n - 1, 0) + x \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r - 1)x^{r-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - 1 = f_{n-1}(x) - 1 + x \cdot f_n(x) \Rightarrow f_n(x) = \frac{f_{n-1}(x)}{1-x} = \frac{f_0(x)}{(1-x)^n}$$

So,  $a(n, r)$  is the coefficient of  $x^r$  in  $f_n(x) = \frac{f_0(x)}{(1-x)^n} = \frac{1}{(1-x)^n} = (1-x)^{-n}$

$$\Rightarrow a(n, r) = (-1)^r \cdot \binom{-n}{r} = \binom{n+r-1}{r}$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

Example (Select  $r$  Objects from  $n$  Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is *never* selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is *once* selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$



# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$   $(n, r \geq 1)$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^r$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$  ( $n, r \geq 1$ )

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^r$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - a(n, 0) = f_{n-1}(x) - a(n - 1, 0) + x \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^{r-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - 1 = f_{n-1}(x) - 1 + x \cdot f_{n-1}(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) = (1 + x) \cdot f_{n-1}(x) = (1 + x)^n \cdot f_0(x)$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$   $(n, r \geq 1)$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^r$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - a(n, 0) = f_{n-1}(x) - a(n - 1, 0) + x \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^{r-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - 1 = f_{n-1}(x) - 1 + x \cdot f_{n-1}(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) = (1 + x) \cdot f_{n-1}(x) = (1 + x)^n \cdot f_0(x)$$

So,  $a(n, r)$  is the coefficient of  $x^r$  in  $f_n(x) = (1 + x)^n \cdot f_0(x) = (1 + x)^n$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Select $r$ Objects from $n$ Distinct Objects w/o Repetition)

$a(n, r)$  = number of ways to select  $r$  objects (w/o repetition) from  $n$  distinct objects

- 1 A particular object is **never** selected:  $r$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects
- 2 A particular object is **once** selected:  $(r - 1)$  objects chosen from  $(n - 1)$  objects

Recurrence Relation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$ ,  $(n \geq r \text{ and } n, r \in \mathbb{N})$   
and  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $a(0, r) = 0$  for  $r > 0$

Generating Function: Let,  $f_n(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r$  generates sequence  $a(n, 0), a(n, 1), \dots$

Derivation:  $a(n, r) = a(n - 1, r) + a(n - 1, r - 1)$   $(n, r \geq 1)$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n, r)x^r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r)x^r + \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^r$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - a(n, 0) = f_{n-1}(x) - a(n - 1, 0) + x \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} a(n - 1, r - 1)x^{r-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) - 1 = f_{n-1}(x) - 1 + x \cdot f_{n-1}(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow f_n(x) = (1 + x) \cdot f_{n-1}(x) = (1 + x)^n \cdot f_0(x)$$

So,  $a(n, r)$  is the coefficient of  $x^r$  in  $f_n(x) = (1 + x)^n \cdot f_0(x) = (1 + x)^n$

$$\Rightarrow a(n, r) = \binom{n}{r}$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

After  $n \geq 0$  interactions, let  $a_n$  = number of high-energy neutrons, and  $b_n$  = number of low-energy neutrons. Assume, at beginning,  $a_0 = 1, b_0 = 0$ .

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

After  $n \geq 0$  interactions, let  $a_n$  = number of high-energy neutrons, and  $b_n$  = number of low-energy neutrons. Assume, at beginning,  $a_0 = 1, b_0 = 0$ .

Recurrence Relation:  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + b_n, \quad b_{n+1} = a_n + b_n \quad (n \geq 0)$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

After  $n \geq 0$  interactions, let  $a_n$  = number of high-energy neutrons, and  $b_n$  = number of low-energy neutrons. Assume, at beginning,  $a_0 = 1, b_0 = 0$ .

Recurrence Relation:  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + b_n, \quad b_{n+1} = a_n + b_n \quad (n \geq 0)$

Generating Function:  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n, \quad g(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n$  generates  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\} \quad (n \geq 0)$



# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

After  $n \geq 0$  interactions, let  $a_n$  = number of high-energy neutrons, and  $b_n$  = number of low-energy neutrons. Assume, at beginning,  $a_0 = 1, b_0 = 0$ .

Recurrence Relation:  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + b_n, \quad b_{n+1} = a_n + b_n \quad (n \geq 0)$

Generating Function:  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n, \quad g(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n$  generates  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\} \quad (n \geq 0)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Derivation: } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} &= 2x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n \Rightarrow f(x) - a_0 = 2xf(x) + xg(x) \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} &= x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n \Rightarrow g(x) - b_0 = xf(x) + xg(x) \end{aligned}$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

After  $n \geq 0$  interactions, let  $a_n$  = number of high-energy neutrons, and  $b_n$  = number of low-energy neutrons. Assume, at beginning,  $a_0 = 1, b_0 = 0$ .

Recurrence Relation:  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + b_n, \quad b_{n+1} = a_n + b_n \quad (n \geq 0)$

Generating Function:  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n, \quad g(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n$  generates  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\} \quad (n \geq 0)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Derivation: } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} &= 2x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n \Rightarrow f(x) - a_0 = 2xf(x) + xg(x) \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} &= x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n \Rightarrow g(x) - b_0 = xf(x) + xg(x) \end{aligned}$$

Solving these system of recurrence equations and using generating functions,

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{1-x}{x^2-3x+1} = \left(\frac{5+\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) + \left(\frac{5-\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) \quad \text{and} \\ g(x) &= \frac{x}{x^2-3x+1} = \left(\frac{-5-3\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) + \left(\frac{-5+3\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) \end{aligned}$$

# Solving Recurrences using Generating Functions

## Example (Solving a System of Recurrence Relations)

Upon interaction with a nucleus of fissionable material, the following activities happen:

- 1 A high-energy neutron releases *two* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutrons.
- 2 A low-energy neutron releases *one* high-energy and *one* low-energy neutron.

After  $n \geq 0$  interactions, let  $a_n$  = number of high-energy neutrons, and  $b_n$  = number of low-energy neutrons. Assume, at beginning,  $a_0 = 1, b_0 = 0$ .

Recurrence Relation:  $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + b_n, \quad b_{n+1} = a_n + b_n \quad (n \geq 0)$

Generating Function:  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n, \quad g(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n$  generates  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\} \quad (n \geq 0)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Derivation: } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} &= 2x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n \Rightarrow f(x) - a_0 = 2xf(x) + xg(x) \\ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} &= x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n + x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \cdot x^n \Rightarrow g(x) - b_0 = xf(x) + xg(x) \end{aligned}$$

Solving these system of recurrence equations and using generating functions,

$$f(x) = \frac{1-x}{x^2-3x+1} = \left(\frac{5+\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) + \left(\frac{5-\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) \quad \text{and}$$

$$g(x) = \frac{x}{x^2-3x+1} = \left(\frac{-5-3\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right) + \left(\frac{-5+3\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{1}{\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}-x}\right)$$

$$a_n = \left(\frac{5+\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+1} + \left(\frac{5-\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+1} \quad \text{and}$$

$$b_n = \left(\frac{-5-3\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+1} + \left(\frac{-5+3\sqrt{5}}{10}\right) \left(\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n+1}, \quad n \geq 0$$

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter



# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal
- Number of Triangulations of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal
- Number of Triangulations of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon
- Number of *Stacky Sequences* [ For  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , Push  $1, 2, \dots, n$  in order into stack, but Pop (from top) + Print anytime in between from unempty stack. All stack-realizable permutations of  $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$  are 'stacky sequences'. ]

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal
- Number of Triangulations of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon
- Number of *Stacky Sequences* [ For  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , Push  $1, 2, \dots, n$  in order into stack, but Pop (from top) + Print anytime in between from unempty stack. All stack-realizable permutations of  $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$  are 'stacky sequences'. ]

## Catalan Numbers solving Non-linear Recurrences

Number of ways to parenthesize  $(n + 1)$ -length string or construct  $(n + 1)$ -node binary trees,

$$a_{n+1} = a_0 a_n + a_1 a_{n-1} + \dots + a_{n-1} a_1 + a_n a_0 = \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i}, \quad (n \geq 0) \text{ and } a_0 = 1$$

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal
- Number of Triangulations of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon
- Number of *Stacky Sequences* [ For  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , Push  $1, 2, \dots, n$  in order into stack, but Pop (from top) + Print anytime in between from unempty stack. All stack-realizable permutations of  $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$  are 'stacky sequences'. ]

## Catalan Numbers solving Non-linear Recurrences

Number of ways to parenthesize  $(n + 1)$ -length string or construct  $(n + 1)$ -node binary trees,

$$a_{n+1} = a_0 a_n + a_1 a_{n-1} + \dots + a_{n-1} a_1 + a_n a_0 = \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i}, \quad (n \geq 0) \text{ and } a_0 = 1$$

Applying generating function,  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n$  (to generate sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ), we get –

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i} \right) \cdot x^{n+1} \Rightarrow [f(x) - a_0] = x[f(x)]^2 \Rightarrow f(x) = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1-4x}}{2x}$$

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal
- Number of Triangulations of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon
- Number of *Stacky Sequences* [ For  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , Push  $1, 2, \dots, n$  in order into stack, but Pop (from top) + Print anytime in between from unempty stack. All stack-realizable permutations of  $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$  are 'stacky sequences'. ]

## Catalan Numbers solving Non-linear Recurrences

Number of ways to parenthesize  $(n + 1)$ -length string or construct  $(n + 1)$ -node binary trees,

$$a_{n+1} = a_0 a_n + a_1 a_{n-1} + \dots + a_{n-1} a_1 + a_n a_0 = \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i}, \quad (n \geq 0) \text{ and } a_0 = 1$$

Applying generating function,  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n$  (to generate sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ), we get -

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i} \right) \cdot x^{n+1} \Rightarrow [f(x) - a_0] = x[f(x)]^2 \Rightarrow f(x) = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1-4x}}{2x}$$

Now,  $\sqrt{1-4x} = (1-4x)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left(\frac{1}{0}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{1}\right)(-4x) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(-4x)^2 + \dots$ , so the coefficient of  $x^{n+1}$  is:

$$\left(\frac{1}{n+1}\right)(-4)^{n+1} = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-1\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-2\right)\dots\left(\frac{1}{2}-(n+1)+1\right)}{(n+1)!} (-4)^{n+1} = \left[\frac{-1}{2(n+1)-1}\right] \cdot \binom{2(n+1)}{n+1}$$

# Solving Special Recurrence Relations

## Example (Solving Non-linear Recurrences using Generating Functions)

Some Recurrent Problems leading to non-linear recurrences:

- Number of ways to parenthesize an  $n$  length expressions
- Number of different ordered unlabelled rooted  $n$ -node binary trees
- Number of non-overlapping handshakes among  $n$  persons seated in round table
- Number of non-intersecting chords of circle with  $n$  points located in perimeter
- Number of paths in  $a \times b$  grid from bottom-left  $\rightarrow$  top-right corner not crossing diagonal
- Number of Triangulations of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon
- Number of *Stacky Sequences* [ For  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , Push  $1, 2, \dots, n$  in order into stack, but Pop (from top) + Print anytime in between from unempty stack. All stack-realizable permutations of  $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$  are 'stacky sequences'. ]

## Catalan Numbers solving Non-linear Recurrences

Number of ways to parenthesize  $(n+1)$ -length string or construct  $(n+1)$ -node binary trees,

$$a_{n+1} = a_0 a_n + a_1 a_{n-1} + \dots + a_{n-1} a_1 + a_n a_0 = \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i}, \quad (n \geq 0) \text{ and } a_0 = 1$$

Applying generating function,  $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cdot x^n$  (to generate sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ), we get -

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} \cdot x^{n+1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i} \right) \cdot x^{n+1} \Rightarrow [f(x) - a_0] = x[f(x)]^2 \Rightarrow f(x) = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1-4x}}{2x}$$

Now,  $\sqrt{1-4x} = (1-4x)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left(\frac{1}{0}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{1}\right)(-4x) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(-4x)^2 + \dots$ , so the coefficient of  $x^{n+1}$  is:

$$\binom{\frac{1}{2}}{n+1} (-4)^{n+1} = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-1\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-2\right)\dots\left(\frac{1}{2}-(n+1)+1\right)}{(n+1)!} (-4)^{n+1} = \left[ \frac{-1}{2(n+1)-1} \right] \cdot \binom{2(n+1)}{n+1}$$

As  $f(x) = \frac{1-\sqrt{1-4x}}{2x}$  (taking -ve sign to get  $a_n \geq 0$ ), so  $a_n = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{-1}{2(n+1)-1} \right] \cdot \binom{2(n+1)}{n+1} = \frac{1}{(n+1)} \binom{2n}{n}$

# Thank You!